



DIRECT/INDIRECT SPEECH

Directions (1–27) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect Speech. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct Speech.

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II

Exam. 16.09.2012)

1. He said, "Ravi, why are you sounding so depressed today?"

(1) He asked Ravi why did he sound so depressed that day.

(2) He asked Ravi why he was sounding so depressed that day.

(3) He told Ravi why he sounded so depressed today.

(4) He asked Ravi that why was he sounding so depressed that day.

2. He asked me, "What time will the sun set tomorrow?"

(1) He asked me what time does the sun set the next day.

(2) He asked me what time the sun would set tomorrow.

(3) He asked me what time the sun would set the next day.

(4) He asked me what time would the sun set the next day.

3. "Tinu, where have you been all these days?" asked the Principal.

(1) The Principal asked Tinu where he had been all those days.

(2) The Principal asked Tinu where he has been all those days.

(3) The Principal asked Tinu where had he been all those days.

(4) The Principal asked to Tinu where was he all those days.

4. "Have you finished your assignment, Minu?" said her brother.

(1) Minu's brother asked Minu if you have finished your assignment.

(2) Minu's brother said to Minu if she had finished her assignment.

(3) Minu's brother asked her if she had finished her assignment.

(4) Minu's brother asked Minu if she has finished her assignment

5. He says, "I go for a walk every morning."

(1) He says that he goes for a walk every morning.

(2) He said that he used to go for a walk every morning

(3) He said that he goes for a walk every morning.

(4) He says he went for a walk every morning.

6. The Principal said, "Why didn't you attend the flag hoisting ceremony, Anuj?"

(1) The Principal asked Anuj why hadn't he attended the flag hoisting ceremony.

(2) The Principal asked to Anuj why he hadn't attended the flag hoisting ceremony.

(3) The Principal asked Anuj why didn't he attend the flag hoisting ceremony.

(4) The Principal asked Anuj why he didn't attend the flag hoisting ceremony.

7. I said to him, "Where have you lost the pen I brought for you yesterday?"

(1) I asked him where he had lost the pen I had brought him yesterday.

(2) I asked him where he had lost the pen I have brought for him the previous day.

(3) I asked him where he had lost the pen I had brought for him the previous day.

(4) I asked him where had he lost the pen I had brought him the previous day.

8. He said, "Garima wants to take up a job while her husband wants her to look after the family."

(1) He said that Garima wanted to take up a job while her husband wanted her to look after the family.

(2) He said that Garima wants to take up a job while her husband wanted her to look after the family.

(3) He told that Garima wanted to take up a job while her husband wants her to look after the family.

(4) He said to Garima that though she wanted to take up a job while her husband wanted her to look after the family.

9. She said, "When I was a child, I wasn't afraid of ghosts."

(1) She said that when she was a child she wasn't not afraid of ghosts.

(2) She said that when she was a child she hadn't been afraid of ghosts.

(3) She said that when she was a child she wasn't afraid of ghosts.

(4) She said that when she had been a child she wasn't afraid of ghosts.

10. He said, "Reena, do you want to buy a house in Noida?"

(1) He told Reena if she wanted to buy a house in Noida.

(2) He asked that did she want to buy a house in Noida.

(3) He asked Reena if she wants to buy a house in Noida.

(4) He asked Reena if she wanted to buy a house in Noida.

11. I said to my friend, "Can I borrow your dictionary for one day?"

(1) I asked my friend if I could borrow his dictionary for one day.

(2) I asked my friend if I could borrow your dictionary for one day.

(3) I asked my friend if I can borrow his dictionary for one day.

(4) I asked my friend that if I can borrow his dictionary for one day.

12. He said, "Let Hari come with us, mother. I'll take care of him"

- (1) He requested his mother to let Hari come with them as he will take care of him.
 - (2) He informed his mother to let Hari come with them as he would take care of him.
 - (3) He told his mother to let Hari come with them as he would take care of him.
 - (4) He told to his mother let Hari come with us as he would take care of him.
13. "No," said the child, "I won't kneel, for if I do, I shall spoil my new pair of trousers."
- (1) The child said that he would not kneel for if he did so he will spoil his new pair of trousers.
 - (2) The child said that he will not kneel for if he kneels he will spoil his new pair of trousers.
 - (3) The child said that he would not kneel for if he did so he would spoil his new pair of trousers.
 - (4) The child said that I will not kneel for if he did kneel, he should spoil his new pair of trousers.
14. The chairman of the selection committee said, "We shall finalise the rest of our team after we have selected the skipper."
- (1) The chairman of the selection committee told that they would finalise the rest of our team after we have selected the skipper.
 - (2) The chairman of the selection committee said that we would finalise the rest of our team after we have selected the skipper.
 - (3) The chairman of the selection committee said that they would finalise the rest of their team after they selected the skipper.
 - (4) The chairman of the selection committee said that they would finalise the rest of their team after they had selected the skipper.
15. He said, "Has anybody been unkind to you?"
- (1) He asked me if anybody had been unkind to me.
 - (2) He asked me had anybody been unkind to me.

- (3) He asked me if anybody had been unkind to you.
 - (4) He asked me if anybody had been unkind to him.
16. The pilot said, "Please don't panic but tighten your seat belts."
- (1) The pilot told to the passengers that they should not panic but tighten the seat belts.
 - (2) The pilot told the passengers to not panic but to tighten their seat belts instead.
 - (3) The pilot told the passengers not to panic but to tighten your seat belts.
 - (4) The pilot told the passengers not to panic but to tighten their seat belts.
17. He said, "Ravi, why are you sounding so depressed today?"
- (1) He asked Ravi why did he sound so depressed that day.
 - (2) He asked Ravi why he was sounding so depressed that day.
 - (3) He told Ravi why he sounded so depressed today.
 - (4) He asked Ravi that why was he sounding so depressed that day.
18. "I shall remain here and the tailor won't be able to find me," said she.
- (1) She said that she should remain there and the tailor won't be able to find me.
 - (2) She said that she should remain there and the tailor would not be able to find her.
 - (3) She said that she would remain there and the tailor would not be able to find her.
 - (4) She said that, she could remain here and the tailor would not find her.
19. Mother said, "Gaurav, you will be eligible for voting when you are 18."
- (1) Mother told Gaurav he would be eligible for voting when he was 18.
 - (2) Mother told Gaurav that he could vote only after 18.
 - (3) Mother told Gaurav you will be eligible for voting when you are 18.

- (4) Mother told Gaurav that he would be eligible for voting when he would be 18.
20. He said, "Bravo! You have done well."
- (1) He applauded him to say that he had done well.
 - (2) He applauded him and said that you have done well.
 - (3) He applauded him, saying that he has done well.
 - (4) He applauded him, saying that he had done well.
21. He said to me, "You are getting lazy day by day."
- (1) He informed me that I am getting lazy day by day.
 - (2) He told me that I have been getting lazy day by day.
 - (3) He told me that I was getting lazy day by day.
 - (4) He told me that you were getting lazy day by day.
22. "When will I be able to vote?" I asked my mother.
- (1) I asked my mother when would he be able to vote.
 - (2) I asked to my mother when I will be able to vote.
 - (3) I asked my mother when I would be able to vote.
 - (4) I asked my mother when would I be able to vote.
23. I said, "Father, when will you buy me a motor cycle?"
- (1) I asked my father when will he buy me a motorcycle.
 - (2) I asked my father when he will buy me a motor cycle.
 - (3) I asked my father when would he buy me a motor cycle.
 - (4) I asked my father when he would buy me a motor cycle.
24. He said to me, "Is there any possibility of my getting promotion this year?"
- (1) He asked me if there was any possibility of my getting promotion this year.
 - (2) He asked me if there was any possibility of his getting promotion this year.
 - (3) He asked me if there was any possibility of his getting promotion that year."
 - (4) He asked me if there is any possibility of his getting promotion this year.

25. The dealer said, "Either make your purchases or walk out of my shop."

- (1) The dealer told the customer that he would either make his purchases or walk out of his shop.
- (2) The dealer ordered the customer to make his purchases and walk out of his shop.
- (3) The dealer told the customer that he should either make his purchases, or walk out of his shop.
- (4) The dealer requested the customer to make his purchases or walk out of his shop.

26. He said, "I do not wish to see any of you; go away."

- (1) He said that he had not wished to see any of them and ordered them to go away.
- (2) He said that he did not wish to see any of them and ordered them to go away.
- (3) He told that he did not wish to see any of them and ordered them to go away.
- (4) He said that he does not wish to see any of us and ordered us to go away.

27. He said to us, "Why are you all sitting about there doing nothing?"

- (1) He asked us why are we all sitting about there doing nothing
- (2) He asked us why we are all sitting about there doing nothing.
- (3) He asked us why we were all sitting about there doing nothing.
- (4) He asked us why were we all sitting about there doing nothing.

Directions (28-52) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect form. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct form.

(SSC SAS Exam. 26.06.2010)

28. "May you live long and prosper", said the old lady to her son.

- (1) The old lady blessed her son with long life and wished him prosperity.

(2) The old lady prayed for her son's long life and prosperity.

(3) The old lady prayed for her son and said that he might live long and prosper.

(4) The old lady blessed her son and prayed for his long life and prosperity.

29. "Many happy returns of your birthday", we said.

- (1) We greeted him on his birthday.
- (2) We said that many happy returns of your birthday.
- (3) We wished him many happy returns of his birthday.
- (4) We prayed for many happy returns of his birthday.

30. "Fie! a soldier and afraid of fighting!" said Babar.

- (1) Babar exclaimed with surprise that a soldier should be afraid of fighting.
- (2) Addressing a soldier, Babar cursed him that he should be afraid of fighting.
- (3) Babar cursed the soldier who was afraid of fighting.
- (4) Babar cursed and exclaimed that a soldier should not be afraid of fighting.

31. He said to Sita, "When do you intend to pay back the money you borrowed from me?"

- (1) He enquired Sita when did she intend to pay back the money she borrowed from him.
- (2) He enquired Sita when she intended to pay back the money she borrowed from him.
- (3) He enquired Sita when she intended to pay back the money she had borrowed from him.
- (4) He enquired when Sita intended to pay back the money she borrowed from him.

32. "So help me Heaven! "he cried, "I will never steal again".

- (1) He wanted Heaven to help him so that he would never steal again.
- (2) He exclaimed to Heaven that he would never steal again.
- (3) He exclaimed Heaven to help him that he would never steal again.
- (4) He called upon Heaven to witness his resolve never to steal again.

33. She said, "I'll give you ₹ 100 to keep your mouth shut."

- (1) She said that she would give him ₹ 100 to keep his mouth shut.
- (2) She offered him ₹ 100 to keep his mouth shut.
- (3) She suggested to him that she would give him ₹ 100 to keep his mouth shut.
- (4) She proposed that she would give him ₹100 to keep his mouth shut.

34. "Doctor", the patient cried, please tell me how much time I have."

- (1) The patient pleaded the doctor how much time she will have.
- (2) The patient exclaimed to the doctor that how much time she had.
- (3) The patient pleaded with the doctor to tell her how much time she had.
- (4) The patient cried to the doctor that how much time had she.

35. "Let's give a party", said Jaya. "Let's not," said her husband.

- (1) Jaya suggested giving a party but her husband answered in the negative.
- (2) Jaya suggested giving a party but her husband opposed the idea.
- (3) Jaya suggested giving a party but her husband contradicted her.
- (4) Jaya suggested giving a party but her husband refused.

36. He said to her, "Did it shake you up as much as it shook me?"

- (1) He asked her if it had shaken her up as much as it shook him.
- (2) He enquired of her if it shook her up as it shook him.
- (3) He enquired of her if it shook her up as much as it had shaken him.
- (4) He asked her if it had shaken her up as it had shaken him.

37. The Chief Minister said, "What a disaster the earthquake is!"

- (1) The Chief Minister cried that the earthquake was a terrible disaster.

- (2) The Chief Minister expressed with surprise that the earthquake was a terrible disaster.
- (3) The Chief Minister exclaimed with sorrow that the earthquake was a terrible disaster.
- (4) The Chief Minister told in pain that the earthquake was a terrible disaster.
38. I said to her, "All your faults will be pardoned if you confess them."
- (1) I told her that all her faults will be pardoned if you confess them.
- (2) I told her that all her faults would be pardoned if she confessed them.
- (3) I told her that all her faults will have to be pardoned if she confessed them.
- (4) I told her that all her faults would have to be pardoned if she confessed them.
39. The teacher said to the student, "Why were you absent yesterday?"
- (1) The teacher asked the student why had been he absent the previous day.
- (2) The teacher asked the student why had he been absent the previous day.
- (3) The teacher informed the student that why he had been absent the next day.
- (4) The teacher asked the student why he had been absent the previous day.
40. 'From one of the windows of my flat I can see the Qutub Minar', said my friend.
- (1) My friend told that from one of the windows of his flat he could see the Qutub Minar.
- (2) My friend said that from one of the windows of his flat he can see the Qutub Minar.
- (3) My friend said that from one of the windows of his flat he could see the Qutub Minar.
- (4) My friend told that from one of the windows of his flat he can see the Qutub Minar.
41. Shanker said to his friend, "Look out! there is a snake behind you."
- (1) Shanker told his friend to look out as there was a snake behind him.

- (2) Shanker exclaimed to his friend with surprise that there was a snake behind him.
- (3) Seeing a snake behind him, Shanker asked his friend to look out.
- (4) Shanker warned his friend that there was a snake behind him.
42. The teacher said to Ram, "Would you like to go on a trip to Kashmir?" Ram said, "Yes"
- (1) The teacher asked if Ram would like to go on a trip to Kashmir and Ram replied yes.
- (2) The teacher asked Ram if he would like to go on a trip to Kashmir and Ram replied yes.
- (3) The teacher asked Ram if he would have liked to go on a trip to Kashmir and Ram replied in the affirmative.
- (4) The teacher asked Ram if he would like to go on a trip to Kashmir and Ram replied in the affirmative.
43. "I Suppose, you children go out for a nice long walk", she said.
- (1) She proposed that the children went out for a nice long walk.
- (2) She advised that the children go out for a nice long walk.
- (3) She suggested that the children go out for a nice long walk.
- (4) She suggested that the children should go out for a nice long walk.
44. Everybody said, "How well she sings!"
- (1) Everybody told us that she sings very well.
- (2) Everybody exclaimed that she sings very well.
- (3) Everybody exclaimed that she sang very well.
- (4) Everybody told us that how she sang very well.
45. The old man of Latur said, "Alas, my only son is dead!"
- (1) The old man of Latur exclaimed with sorrow that his only son was dead.
- (2) The old man of Latur told with pain that his only son was dead.
- (3) The old man of Latur expressed with anguish that his only son was dead.

- (4) The old man of Latur sorrowfully narrated that his only son was dead.
46. I said, "Let Mohan do his worst, he cannot harm me."
- (1) I suggested to Mohan to do his worst, he could not harm me.
- (2) I told that if Mohan did his worst, he could not harm me.
- (3) I declared that Mohan might do his worst, he could not harm me.
- (4) I declared that though Mohan might do his worst, he could not harm me.
47. "Call the first witness", said the judge.
- (1) The judge commanded to call the first witness.
- (2) The judge commanded them to call the first witness.
- (3) The judge commanded that the first witness be called.
- (4) The judge commanded the first witness to be called.
48. The queen said to her son, "You must go to the forest and remain there till your father calls you back."
- (1) The queen ordered her son to go to the forest and remain there till his father calls him back.
- (2) The queen told her son that he must go to the forest and remain there till his father called him back.
- (3) The queen told his son that you must go to the forest and remain there till your father called you back.
- (4) The queen told her son to go to the forest and remained there till his father called him back.
49. I said, "When it gets dark, light the lantern and hang it out."
- (1) I said that when it got dark he light the lantern and hung it out.
- (2) I requested that when it got dark he may light the lantern and hang it out.
- (3) I said that when it got dark he should light the lantern and hang it out.
- (4) I told that when it got dark he should light the lantern and hang it out.

50. The teacher said to Ashok, "I shall report the matter to the Principal if you misbehave again."

- (1) The teacher told Ashok that he would be reporting the matter to the Principal if he misbehaved again.
- (2) The teacher warned Ashok that he would report the matter to the Principal if he misbehaved again.
- (3) The teacher threatened Ashok to report the matter to the Principal if he would misbehave again.
- (4) The teacher cautioned Ashok about reporting the matter to the Principal if he misbehaved again.

51. "Mohan made this mess. Let him clear it up", said his father.

- (1) Mohan's father said that Mohan had made the mess and proposed that he clear it up.
- (2) Mohan's father said that Mohan had made the mess and that he was to clear it.
- (3) Mohan's father said that Mohan had made the mess and suggested that he clear it.
- (4) Mohan's father said that Mohan had made the mess and that he should clear it.

52. "Do as you wish, but don't come and ask me for help if you get into difficulties."

- (1) He told me to do as he wished or he wouldn't come and help me if I got into difficulties.
- (2) He told me to do as I wished, but not to go and ask him for help if I got into difficulties.
- (3) He ordered me to do as I wished, but not to go and ask him for help if, I got into difficulties.
- (4) He told me that unless I did as I wished he would not come and help me if I got into difficulties. where had he been all those

Directions (53-77) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect form. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct form.

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II
Exam. 01.08.2010)

53. Socrates said, "Virtue is its own reward."

- (1) Socrates said that virtue had its own rewards.
- (2) Socrates says that virtue is its own reward.
- (3) Socrates said that virtue is its own reward.
- (4) Socrates said that virtue was its own reward.

54. He said to the interviewer, "Could you please repeat the question?"

- (1) He requested the interviewer if he could please repeat the question.
- (2) He requested the interviewer to please repeat the question.
- (3) He requested the interviewer to repeat the question.
- (4) He requested the interviewer if he could repeat the question.

55. He said, "It used to be a lovely, quiet street."

- (1) He said that it used to be a lovely, quiet street.
- (2) He pointed out that it had used to be a lovely, quiet street.
- (3) He said that there used to be a lovely, quiet street.
- (4) He inquired whether there was a lovely, quiet street.

56. The Prime Minister said that no one would be allowed to disturb the peace.

- (1) The Prime Minister said, "We shall not allow any one to disturb the peace."
- (2) The Prime Minister said, "We would not allow no one to disturb the peace"
- (3) The Prime Minister said, "No one will disturb the peace."
- (4) The Prime Minister said, "No one can disturb the peace."

57. The spectators said, "Bravo! Well done players."

- (1) The spectators shouted that the players were doing very well.
- (2) The spectators exclaimed with joy that the players were doing very well.
- (3) The spectators applauded the players saying that they had done well.

(4) The spectators applauded the players joyfully to do well.

58. I said to my friend, "Good Morning. Let us go for a picnic today."

- (1) I told good morning to my friend and asked to go for a picnic that day.
- (2) I wished my friend good morning and proposed that we should go for a picnic that day.
- (3) I wished my friend good morning and proposed that they should go for a picnic that day.
- (4) I told good morning to my friend and suggested to go for a picnic today.

59. The new student asked the old one, "Do you know my name?"

- (1) The new student asked the old one if he knew his name.
- (2) The new student asked the old one that whether he knew his name.
- (3) The new student asked the old one did he know his name
- (4) The new student asked the old one if he knows his name

60. I warned her that I could no longer tolerate her coming late.

- (1) I said to her, "You can no longer tolerate my coming late."
- (2) I said to her, "I can no longer tolerate your coming late."
- (3) I said to her, "He can no longer tolerate her coming late."
- (4) I said to her, "I can no longer tolerate she coming late."

61. I said to my mother, "I will certainly take you to Bangalore this week."

- (1) I told my mother he would certainly take her to Bangalore that week.
- (2) I told my mother that I would certainly take her to Bangalore that week.
- (3) I told my mother that she would certainly take her to Bangalore that week.
- (4) I told to my mother that I would take you to Bangalore that week.

62. "How long does the journey take" my co-passenger asked me.

- (1) My co-passenger asked me how long does the journey take?

- (2) I asked my co-passenger how long the journey would take.
- (3) My co-passenger wanted to know how long the journey would take.
- (4) My co-passenger asked me how long the journey did take.
63. "How clever of you to have solved the puzzle so quickly," said the mother.
- (1) The mother exclaimed admiringly that it was very clever of him to have solved the puzzle so quickly.
- (2) The mother expressed that he was so clever to have solved the puzzle quickly.
- (3) The mother told that he was very clever in solving the puzzle so quickly.
- (4) The mother exclaimed with joy that he was clever enough to solve the puzzle so quickly.
64. He said he goes for a walk every morning.
- (1) He said, "I went for a walk every morning."
- (2) He said, "I go for a walk every morning."
- (3) He said, "I will go for a walk every morning."
- (4) He said, "He goes for a walk every morning."
65. I reiterated, "I don't care about the job."
- (1) I reiterated I didn't care about the job.
- (2) I said again and again I didn't care about the job.
- (3) I reiterated that I did not care about the job.
- (4) I repeatedly said that I cared about the job.
66. I said to my brother, "Let us go to some hill station for a change."
- (1) I suggested to my brother that they should go to some hill station for a change.
- (2) I suggested to my brother that we should go to some hill station for a change.
- (3) I suggested to my brother that let us go to some hill station for a change.
- (4) I suggested to my brother that let them go to some hill station for a change.
67. I wondered how many discoveries went unheeded.
- (1) I said, "How many discoveries have gone unheeded?"
- (2) I said, "How many discoveries went unheeded?"
- (3) I said, "Do discoveries go unheeded?"
- (4) I said, "How many discoveries go unheeded?"
68. Gopan said to me, "Can you do these sums for me?"
- (1) Gopan asked me if I could do those sums for him.
- (2) Gopan asked me if I can do those sums for him.
- (3) Gopan asked me if I can do these sums for him.
- (4) Gopan asked if I could do these sums for him.
69. The boss said, "It's time we began planning our work".
- (1) The boss said that it was time they had begun planning their work.
- (2) The boss said that it was time we had begun planning our work.
- (3) The boss said that it was time they began planning their work.
- (4) The boss said that it was time we began planning his work.
70. He said to the judge, "I did not commit this crime."
- (1) He told the judge that he did not commit the crime.
- (2) He told the judge that he had not committed the crime.
- (3) He told the judge that he had not committed that crime.
- (4) He told the judge that he had not committed this crime.
71. Rahul said, "I will do it now or never".
- (1) Rahul said that he will do it now or never.
- (2) Rahul said that he will now or never do it.
- (3) Rahul said that he would do it then or never
- (4) Rahul said that he would now or never do it.
72. My father once said to me, "If I can't trust my people, then I don't want to be doing this."
- (1) His father once told him that if he couldn't trust his people then he didn't want to be doing that.
- (2) My father once told me that if he couldn't trust his people then he didn't want to be doing that.
- (3) My father once told me that if he couldn't trust my people then he didn't want to be doing that.
- (4) My father once told me that if he couldn't trust his people then he didn't want to be doing this.
73. Doshi said to his wife, "Please select one of these necklaces."
- (1) Doshi requested his wife to select one of those necklaces.
- (2) Doshi said to his wife to please select one of these necklaces.
- (3) Doshi told his wife to please select one of those necklaces.
- (4) Doshi pleased his wife to select one of those necklaces.
74. He wrote in his report, "The rainfall has been scanty till now."
- (1) He reported that the rainfall has been scanty till now
- (2) He reported that the rainfall had been scanty till now.
- (3) He reported that the rainfall has been scanty till then.
- (4) He reported that the rainfall had been scanty till then.
75. "Govind," said the manager sternly, "I command you to tell me what the old man said."
- (1) The manager sternly told Govind that he commanded him to tell him what the old man had said.
- (2) The manager commanded sternly to Govind to tell him what the oldman had said.
- (3) The manager commanded Govind to tell him what the old man said.
- (4) The manager sternly commanded Govind to tell him what the old man had said.
76. I said to him, "Where have you lost the pen I brought for you yesterday?"
- (1) I asked him where he had lost the pen I had brought him yesterday.

- (2) I asked him where he had lost the pen I have brought for him the previous day.
- (3) I asked him where he had lost the pen I had brought for him the previous day.
- (4) I asked him where had he lost the pen I had brought him the previous day.
77. She said to Rita, "Please help me with my homework."
- (1) She requested Rita to help her in her homework.
- (2) Rita requested her to help her with her homework.
- (3) She requested Rita to help her with her homework.
- (4) She requested Rita to help her homework.
- Directions (78-102) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect Speech. Out of the four alternatives suggested select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct Speech.
- (SSC CISF ASI Exam. 29.08.2010)
78. "What a stupid fellow you are !" she remarked.
- (1) She exclaimed that what a stupid fellow he was.
- (2) She exclaimed that he was a very stupid fellow.
- (3) She exclaimed in disgust how he could be so stupid.
- (4) She asked him what a stupid fellow he was.
79. The police said to the thief, "Don't move."
- (1) The police ordered the thief not to move.
- (2) The police ordered the thief that he should not move.
- (3) The police told the thief that he did not move.
- (4) The police ordered to the thief to not move.
80. He said, "I am going to college just now."
- (1) He said that he was going to college just now.
- (2) He asked that he was going to college just then.
- (3) He said that he was going to college just then.
- (4) He asked that he was going to college just now.
81. The teacher said to the student "Can you explain this ?"
- (1) The teacher asked the student whether he can explain this.
- (2) The teacher asked the student whether he can explain that.
- (3) The teacher asked the student whether he could explain this.
- (4) The teacher asked the student whether he could explain that.
82. Ramu said, "My master is planning to build a huge house in Khandala."
- (1) Ramu said that his master planned to build a huge house in Khandala.
- (2) Ramu said that his master is planning to build a huge house in Khandala.
- (3) Ramu said that his master's plan is to build a huge house in Khandala.
- (4) Ramu said that his master was planning to build a huge house in Khandala.
83. Nandita said to Nitin, "Can you solve this sum ?"
- (1) Nandita asked Nitin if could he solve this sum.
- (2) Nandita asked Nitin if could he solve that sum.
- (3) Nandita asked Nitin if he could solve this sum.
- (4) Nandita asked Nitin if he could solve that sum.
84. He said, "How lovely the scene is!"
- (1) He exclaimed that the scene is very lovely.
- (2) He exclaimed that how the scene was lovely.
- (3) He exclaimed that the scene was very lovely.
- (4) He exclaimed that the scene is indeed lovely.
85. Bill said, 'I am here to help you all.'
- (1) Bill said that he is here to help you all.
- (2) Bill said that he was there to help us all.
- (3) Bill said that he was here to help us all.
- (4) Bill said that he is there to help us all.
86. The kids yelled in a loud voice, "We love our family."
- (1) The kids yelled loudly that they love our family.
- (2) The kids yelled in a loud voice that they loved their family.
- (3) The kids yelled in a loud voice that they loved our family.
- (4) The kids were shouting loudly that they loved their family.
87. He said to me, "Please visit my company tomorrow".
- (1) He said to me to visit his company tomorrow.
- (2) He requested me to visit his company tomorrow.
- (3) He requested me to visit his company the next day.
- (4) He said to me to visit his company the next day.
88. He said, "My parents are arriving tomorrow."
- (1) He said that his parents are arriving the next day.
- (2) He said that his parents were arriving the next day.
- (3) He said that his parents are arriving tomorrow.
- (4) He said that his parents have arrived the next day.
89. He said, "How cruel of him !"
- (1) He remarked that it was very cruel of him.
- (2) He remarked on his great cruelty.
- (3) He remark that it was very cruel of him.
- (4) He remarked that it is very cruel of him.
90. "How did it get here ?" She wanted to know.
- (1) She wanted to know how did it get here.
- (2) She wanted to know how it had got there.
- (3) She wanted to know how did it got there.
- (4) She wanted to know how it get there.
91. "You are one of Pinkerton's men, I presume," he said.
- (1) He said that he presumed me one of Pinkerton's men.
- (2) He said that he presumed that I was one of Pinkerton's men.
- (3) He said that he presumed me as one of Pinkerton's men.
- (4) He said that he presumes that I am one of Pinkerton's men.
92. "Away !" she said to the man, "do not trouble your family anymore".

- (1) She asked the man to go away and not trouble the family any more.
- (2) She asked the man not to trouble the family that was away, any more.
- (3) She asked the man not to trouble your family any more and go away.
- (4) She asked the man to go away and not trouble his family any more.
93. He asked me, "Have you finished reading the magazine?"
- (1) He asked me whether I had finished reading the magazine.
- (2) He asked me if had I finished reading the magazine.
- (3) He asked me if I have finished reading the magazine.
- (4) He asked me whether I finished reading the magazine.
94. He said, "We have done our work."
- (1) He said that he had done his work.
- (2) He said that they have done their work.
- (3) He said that they had done their work.
- (4) He said that they should do their work.
95. He said that he had been waiting there for a long time.
- (1) He said, "I have been waiting here for a long time."
- (2) He said, "He has been waiting here for a long time."
- (3) He said, "He has been waiting there for a long time."
- (4) He said, "I am waiting here for a long time."
96. "Please, take me to the officer," said the visitor.
- (1) The visitor requested them to take him to the officer.
- (2) The visitor told them to take him to the officer.
- (3) The visitor requested for the officer to be taken.
- (4) The visitor wanted the officer to take him there.
97. Nitin said, "What a pleasant atmosphere this place has!"
- (1) Nitin exclaimed with joy that place was a pleasant atmosphere.
- (2) Nitin exclaimed with joy that was a pleasant atmosphere in that place.

- (3) Nitin exclaimed with joy that that place had a pleasant atmosphere.
- (4) Nitin exclaimed with joy that what a pleasant atmosphere that place had.
98. Aarati said, "I am in a hurry today."
- (1) Aarati said that she was in a hurry that day.
- (2) Aarati said that I am in a hurry today.
- (3) Aarati said that she is in a hurry today.
- (4) Aarati said that she is in a hurry that day.
99. They said, "We are practising for the next match."
- (1) They said that they are practising for the next match.
- (2) They said that they practised for the next match.
- (3) They said that they were practising for the next match.
- (4) They said they were going to practise for the next match.
100. He said, "Long may you live."
- (1) He suggested that my life might be long.
- (2) He prayed that my life might be long.
- (3) He prayed that my life may be longer.
- (4) He declared that my life is longer.
101. "When did you meet my brother?" She asked me.
- (1) She wanted to know when did I meet her brother.
- (2) She asked when did I meet my brother.
- (3) She asked me when I had met her brother.
- (4) She wants to know when I had met my brother.
102. Ruby requested me to lend her Rs. 1000 the next day.
- (1) Ruby said to me, "Please lend me Rs. 1000 the next day."
- (2) Ruby said to me, "Please lend her Rs. 1000 the next day."
- (3) Ruby said to me, "Please lend her Rs. 1000 tomorrow."
- (4) Ruby said to me, "Please lend me Rs. 1000 tomorrow."
- Directions (103 – 127) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct Speech. Out of

- the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect Speech.
- (SSC CPO (SI) Exam. 12.12.2010 Paper-II)
103. "Do you want balloons?" he said to the child.
- (1) He asked the child if it wanted balloons.
- (2) He asked the child whether it had wanted balloons.
- (3) He asked the child did it want balloons.
- (4) He asked the child if it would want balloons.
104. She said, "How ugly I look in this dress!"
- (1) She said that how ugly she was looking in that dress.
- (2) She exclaimed how ugly she looked in that dress.
- (3) She expressed how ugly she looked in that dress.
- (4) She exclaimed that she looked very ugly in that dress.
105. She said "You can leave the books here."
- (1) She said that they can leave the books there.
- (2) She said that they could leave the books there.
- (3) She said that they can leave the books here.
- (4) She said that they could leave the books here.
106. My friend said "I am leaving today."
- (1) My friend said that he is leaving today.
- (2) My friend said that he was leaving today.
- (3) My friend said that he leaves today.
- (4) My friend said that he was leaving that day.
107. Mukta said to Puneet, "My mother is a good cook".
- (1) Mukta told Puneet that her mother was a good cook.
- (2) Mukta told Puneet that my mother was a good cook.
- (3) Mukta told to Puneet that her mother is a good cook.
- (4) Mukta asked Puneet that her mother is a good cook.
108. The commander said to the army, "March forward".
- (1) The commander asked the army march forward.

- (2) The commander ordered the army to march forward.
 (3) The commander requested the army to go forward.
 (4) The army requested the commander to march.
109. He promised, "I will do it tomorrow."
 (1) He promised that he will do it tomorrow.
 (2) He promised that he will do it the next day.
 (3) He promised that he would do it tomorrow.
 (4) He promised that he would do it the next day.
110. Geeta said, "I did not do this deliberately."
 (1) Geeta said that I had not done that deliberately.
 (2) Geeta said that she had not done that deliberately.
 (3) Geeta said that she has not done this deliberately.
 (4) Geeta said that I have not done this deliberately.
111. She exclaimed, "I'm afraid we are rather late!"
 (1) She exclaimed that they were frightened of being late.
 (2) She exclaimed that she was afraid that they were rather late.
 (3) She shouted that they were scared that they would be late.
 (4) She screamed that she was worried that they would all be late.
112. She said to me, "What can I do for you?"
 (1) She asked me what she could do for me.
 (2) She asked me what can she do for me.
 (3) She asked me what she can do for me.
 (4) She asked me whether she can do anything for me.
113. He said, 'Alas! I am undone!'
 (1) He said that it was his undoing.
 (2) He exclaimed pathetically that he was undone.
 (3) He stated that he was undone.
 (4) He cried that he was being undone.
114. "I shall unlock the secrets of their success," he said.
 (1) He said that he shall unlock the secrets of their success.
 (2) He said that he should unlock the secrets of their success.
 (3) He said that he would unlock the secrets of their success.
 (4) He said that he will unlock the secrets of their success.
115. "I wonder what he wants of us," said Quint.
 (1) Quint said that he was wondering what he wanted of them.
 (2) Quint said that he wondered what he wanted of us.
 (3) Quint said he wondered what he wants of them.
 (4) Quint said that he wondered what he wanted of them.
116. Dinesh said, "I want to eat a good mango one of these days."
 (1) Dinesh said he wants to eat a good mango one of these days.
 (2) Dinesh said that he wanted to eat a good mango one of those days.
 (3) Dinesh said that he wants to eat a good mango one of those days.
 (4) Dinesh said that he wanted to eat a good mango one of these days.
117. He said, "I intend to leave for Delhi tonight."
 (1) He said that he will intend to leave for Delhi tonight.
 (2) He said that he should intend to leave for Delhi that night.
 (3) He said that he intended to leave for Delhi that night.
 (4) He said that his intention is to leave for Delhi tonight.
118. He said, "The Sun rises in the east."
 (1) He said that the Sun rised in the East.
 (2) He said that the Sun rises in the East.
 (3) He said that the Sun will rise in the East.
 (4) He said that the Sun may rise in the East.
119. Ram asked Krishna, "Where are you going today?"
 (1) Ram asked Krishna where he was going that day.
 (2) Ram asked Krishna as to where he was going on the previous day.
 (3) Ram asked Krishna where was he going the next day.
 (4) Ram asked Krishna where was he going the day before.
120. He said, "What a fool Tom is!"
 (1) He exclaimed that he was a big fool.
 (2) He exclaimed that Tom was a big fool.
 (3) He wondered what kind of a fool Tom was.
 (4) He claimed that Tom was a big fool.
121. "What kind of scheme do you have?" Amit asked the insurance agent.
 (1) Amit asked the insurance agent what kind of scheme he/she had.
 (2) Amit asked the insurance agent what kind of scheme he/she has.
 (3) Amit asked the insurance agent what kind of scheme he/she is having
 (4) Amit asked the insurance agent what kind of scheme he/she was having.
122. The doctor said to the patient, "Take complete rest."
 (1) The doctor told to the patient that take complete rest.
 (2) The doctor advised the patient to take complete rest
 (3) The doctor suggested the patient to take complete rest
 (4) The doctor asked the patient take complete rest.
123. Mini said to me, "I have bought this flat for my mother."
 (1) Mini told that she had bought that flat for her mother.
 (2) Mini said that she bought that flat for her mother.
 (3) Mini said she has bought that flat for mother.
 (4) Mini told me that she had bought that flat for her mother.
124. He said, "I will come again."
 (1) He said that he will come again.
 (2) He says he is coming again.

- (3) He says he'll come again.
 (4) He said that he would come again.
125. "Don't do any more work until you have had a rest," her mother advised her.
 (1) Her mother advised her not to do any more work until she has had a rest.
 (2) Her mother advised her not to do any more work until she had had a rest.
 (3) Her mother advised her that she would not do any more work until she had had a rest.
 (4) He mother advised her that she need not do any more work until she had had a rest.
126. "Make me another suit like this," he said to the tailor.
 (1) He asked the tailor to make him another suit like this.
 (2) He asks the tailor to make him another suit like this.
 (3) He asked the tailor to make him another suit like that.
 (4) He asked the tailor to make me another suit like this.
127. My Principal told me, "Don't conduct any test tomorrow."
 (1) My Principal told me not to conduct any test tomorrow.
 (2) My Principal told me not to conduct any test tomorrow.
 (3) My Principal ordered me don't conduct any test.
 (4) My Principal ordered me not to conduct any test the next day.
- Directions (128 – 152) : In the following questions, sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect Speech. Out of the four alternatives suggested select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct Speech.
- (SSC CPO (SI, ASI & Intelligence Officer Exam. 28.08.2011)
128. The boy said, "Bravo ! You have done well."
 (1) The boy said that he had done well.
 (2) The boy exclaimed that he had done well.
 (3) The boy applauded him, saying that he had done well.
 (4) The boy said bravo he had done well.
129. I said to my sister, "I brought you a doll yesterday."

- (1) I told my sister that I brought you a doll the previous day.
 (2) I told my sister that I had brought her a doll the previous day.
 (3) I told my sister that I had brought her a doll yesterday.
 (4) I told my sister that I brought her a doll yesterday.
130. The captain said to the army, "March forward, now."
 (1) The captain said to the army that march forward now.
 (2) The captain ordered the army to march forward then.
 (3) The captain ordered the army to march on that day.
 (4) The captain ordered the army to attack the enemy.
131. They said, "We've lived here for a long time."
 (1) They said they have lived there for a long time.
 (2) They said they lived here for a long time.
 (3) They said they had lived there for a long time.
 (4) They said they have lived for a long time.
132. "Would you open the door please?"
 (1) She asked me to please open the door.
 (2) She requested me to open the door.
 (3) She requested me to please open the door.
 (4) She asked me open the door.
133. The teacher said, "Gandhiji was born in India."
 (1) The teacher said that Gandhiji had been born in India.
 (2) The teacher says that Gandhiji was born in India.
 (3) The teacher said that Gandhiji was born in India.
 (4) The teacher will say that Gandhiji was born in India.
134. The teacher said to the student "Why do you disturb the class?"
 (1) The teacher said to the student why he disturbed the class.
 (2) The teacher told the student why he had disturbed the class.
 (3) The teacher asked the student why he disturbed the class.

- (4) The teacher asked the student why he had disturbed the class.
135. Rita said to me, "Will you lend me this classic ?"
 Rita asked me
 (1) if I would lend her that classic
 (2) if she would lend me that classic
 (3) if I will lend her that classic
 (4) would I lend her that classic?
136. The lady said to the servant, "If you don't wash the clothes properly, I will dismiss you."
 (1) The lady warned the servant that she would dismiss her if she didn't wash the clothes properly.
 (2) The lady told the servant that she would dismiss her on the event of bad work.
 (3) The lady cautioned the servant that she must wash the clothes properly.
 (4) The lady advised the servant to wash the clothes properly.
137. "There are ceremonies going on", he said to me.
 (1) He told me that there were ceremonies going on.
 (2) He told that there have been ceremonies going on.
 (3) He told that there had been ceremonies going on.
 (4) He told that there are ceremonies going on.
138. He said to Manoj, "May you prosper."
 (1) He wished that Manoj should prosper.
 (2) He wished that Manoj may prosper.
 (3) He wished that Manoj might prosper.
 (4) He wished Manoj to prosper.
139. The mother said, "What can I do for you, my son ?"
 (1) The mother said to her son what she could do for him.
 (2) The mother asked her son what she did for him.
 (3) The mother asked her son what she could do for him.
 (4) The mother asked what she could do for him, my son.

140. My Daddy always says, "Getting up early in the morning is a good habit."
 (1) My Daddy always says that to get up early in the morning is a good habit.
 (2) My Daddy always says that getting up early in the morning is a good habit.
 (3) My Daddy always advises that getting up early in the morning was a good habit.
 (4) My Daddy always warns that to get up early in the morning was a good habit.
141. "Be quiet" I said to them.
 (1) I told them to be quiet.
 (2) I asked them to remain quiet.
 (3) I told to them for being quiet.
 (4) I ordered them to remain quiet.
142. The mother says to the child, "The Sun rises in the East."
 (1) The mother tells the child that the Sun rose in the East.
 (2) The mother says the child that the Sun rises in the East.
 (3) The mother tells the child that the Sun rises in the East.
 (4) The mother informs the child that the Sun rose in the East.
143. He said, "The teacher usually does not ask any question."
 He said that
 (1) the teacher usually does not ask any question.
 (2) the teacher usually did not ask any question.
 (3) the teacher usually asked no question.
 (4) the teacher usually did not asked any question.
144. "Where do you live?" asked the stranger.
 (1) The stranger asked where I lived.
 (2) The stranger enquired where I was living.
 (3) The stranger questioned where did I live.
 (4) The stranger wanted to know where I live.
145. I said to him, "How do you know this?"

- (1) I asked him how I knew that.
 (2) I asked him that how he knew that.
 (3) I told him how I knew that.
 (4) I asked him how he knew that.
146. He said, "We are all sinners."
 (1) He said that we are all sinners.
 (2) He said they were all sinners.
 (3) He said that he was a sinner.
 (4) He said all were sinners.
147. "Would you mind taking off your shoes before entering the house?" He said to the foreigner.
 (1) He requested the foreigner to take off his shoes before entering the house.
 (2) He told the foreigner that he must take off his shoes before entered the house.
 (3) He said the foreigner that to take off his shoes before entered the house.
 (4) Before entering the house he said that shoes must be taken off.
148. "I lost my book yesterday", she said to her teacher.
 (1) She admitted to her teacher that she had lost her book the previous day.
 (2) To her teacher she was admitted that she has lost her book the previous day.
 (3) She admitted losing her book to her teacher yesterday.
 (4) She said to her teacher that I have lost my book the previous day.
149. "Do you want some more sweets?" asked my friend.
 (1) My friend asked me if I want some more sweets.
 (2) My friend said to me if I wanted some more sweets.
 (3) My friend asked me whether I wanted some more sweets.
 (4) My friend asked me that I wanted some more sweets.
150. "I have seen the film before" Suneetha says.
 (1) Suneetha said that she had seen the film before.
 (2) Suneetha says that she has seen the film before.
 (3) Suneetha said that the film was seen by her before.
 (4) Suneetha said that she saw the film earlier.

151. He ordered his servant to do as he was told.
 (1) He ordered his servant, "Do as you are told."
 (2) He said to his servant, "Do as you are told."
 (3) He said to his servant. "Do as I told you."
 (4) He said to his servant, "Do as you were told."
152. She said to the girl, "Did you do this?"
 (1) She asked the girl that she did that.
 (2) She asked the girl if she did that.
 (3) She asked the girl if she had done that.
 (4) She told the girl that she had done that.

Directions (153-177) : In the following question, sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect Speech. Out of the four alternatives suggested select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct Speech.

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II
Exam. 04.09.2011)

153. Kiran asked me, "Did you see the cricket match on television last night?"
 (1) Kiran asked me whether I saw the cricket match on television the earlier night.
 (2) Kiran asked me whether I had seen the cricket match on television the earlier night.
 (3) Kiran asked me did I see the cricket match on television last night.
 (4) Kiran asked me whether I had seen the cricket match on television last night.
154. David said to Anna, "Mona will leave for her native place tomorrow."
 (1) David told Anna that Mona will leave for her native place tomorrow.
 (2) David told Anna that Mona left for her native place the next day.
 (3) David told to Anna that Mona would be leaving for her native place tomorrow.
 (4) David told Anna that Mona would leave for her native place the next day.

155. I said to him, "Why are you working so hard?"
- (1) I asked him why he was working so hard.
 - (2) I asked him why was he working so hard.
 - (3) I asked him why he had been working so hard.
 - (4) I asked him why had he been working so hard.
156. He said to her, "What a cold day!"
- (1) He told her that it was a cold day.
 - (2) He exclaimed that it was a cold day.
 - (3) He exclaimed sorrowfully that it was a cold day.
 - (4) He exclaimed that it was a very cold day.
157. The tailor said to him, "Will you have the suit ready by tomorrow evening?"
- (1) The tailor asked him that he will have the suit ready by the next evening.
 - (2) The tailor asked him that he would had the suit ready by the next evening.
 - (3) The tailor asked him if he would have the suit ready by the next evening.
 - (4) The tailor asked him if he will like to have the suit ready by the next evening.
158. He said to the interviewer, "Could you please repeat the question?"
- (1) He requested the interviewer if he could please repeat the question.
 - (2) He requested the interviewer to please repeat the question.
 - (3) He requested the interviewer to repeat the question.
 - (4) He requested the interviewer if he could repeat the question.
159. He said, "Be quiet and listen to my words."
- (1) He urged them to be quiet and listen to his words.
 - (2) He urged them and said be quiet and listen to words.
 - (3) He said they should be quiet and listen to his words.
 - (4) He said you should be quiet and listen to my words.
160. He said to me, "I have often told you not to play with fire."
- (1) He said that he has often been telling me not to play with fire.
 - (2) He told me that he had often told me not to play with fire.
 - (3) He reminded me that he often said to me not to play with fire.
 - (4) He said to me that he often told me not to play with fire.
161. The Captain said to his men, "Stand at ease."
- (1) The Captain urged his men to stand at ease.
 - (2) The Captain wanted his men to stand at ease.
 - (3) The Captain told his men that they should stand at ease.
 - (4) The Captain commanded his men to stand at ease.
162. Pawan said to me, "If I hear any news, I'll phone you."
- (1) Pawan told me that if he heard any news, he will phone me.
 - (2) Pawan told me that if he will hear any news, he will phone me.
 - (3) Pawan told me if he had heard any news, he would phone me.
 - (4) Pawan told me that if he heard any news, he would phone me.
163. The teacher said to Mahesh, "Congratulations! Wish you success in life."
- (1) The teacher congratulated Mahesh and said wish you success in life.
 - (2) The teacher wished congratulations and success in life to Mahesh.
 - (3) The teacher said congratulations to Mahesh and wished him success in life.
 - (4) The teacher congratulated Mahesh and wished him success in life.
164. The poor examinee said, "O God, take pity on me."
- (1) The poor examinee prayed God to take pity on him.
 - (2) The poor examinee, invoking God, implored him to take pity on him.
- (3) The poor examinee exclaimed that God take pity on him.
- (4) The poor examinee asked God to take pity on him.
165. "Where will you be tomorrow," I said, "in case I have to ring you?"
- (1) I asked where you will be the next day in case I will ring him.
 - (2) I asked where he would be the next day in case I had to ring him.
 - (3) I said to him where he will be in case I have to ring him.
 - (4) I enquired about his whereabouts the next day in case I would have to ring up.
166. Seeta said to me, "Can you give me your pen?"
- (1) Seeta asked me can I give her my pen.
 - (2) Seeta asked me if I can give me your pen.
 - (3) Seeta asked me if I could give her my pen.
 - (4) Seeta asked me if I gave her my pen.
167. The father warned his son that he should be beware of him.
- (1) The father warned his son, "Beware of him!"
 - (2) The father warned his son, "Watch that chap!"
 - (3) The father warned his son, "Be careful about him."
 - (4) The father warned his son, "Don't fall into the trap."
168. Manna asked Rohan, "Have you sat in a trolley bus before?"
- (1) Manna asked Rohan whether he had sat in a trolley bus earlier.
 - (2) Manna asked Rohan had he sat in a trolley bus before.
 - (3) Manna asked Rohan if he sat on a trolley bus before.
 - (4) Manna asked Rohan if he has ever sat in a trolley bus
169. Farhan asked Geeta, "Could you lend me a hundred rupees until tomorrow?"
- (1) Farhan asked Geeta whether she could lend him a hundred rupees until tomorrow.
 - (2) Farhan asked Geeta whether she could lend him a hundred rupees until the next day.

- (3) Farhan asked Geeta whether she could lend me a hundred rupees until the next day.
- (4) Farhan asked whether Geeta could lend me a hundred rupees until the next day.
170. "What about going for a swim," he said, "It's quite fine now."
- (1) He asked me what about going for a swim as it was quite fine then.
- (2) He proposed going for a swim as it was quite fine.
- (3) He suggested going for a swim as it was quite fine.
- (4) He advised me to go for a swim as it was quite fine.
171. "You can't bathe in this sea," he said to me, "it's very rough."
- (1) He said that I can't bathe in this sea because it's very rough.
- (2) He said that you couldn't bathe in that sea if it was very rough.
- (3) He said that I couldn't bathe in that sea as it was very rough.
- (4) He said that you can't bathe in this sea since it was very rough.
172. Jagdish said, "We passed by a beautiful lake when we went on a trip to Goa."
- (1) Jagdish said that they passed by a beautiful lake when they had gone on a trip to Goa.
- (2) Jagdish said that they had passed by a beautiful lake when they went on a trip to Goa.
- (3) Jagdish said that they had passed by a beautiful lake when they had gone on a trip to Goa.
- (4) Jagdish said they passed by a beautiful lake when they went on a trip to Goa.
173. He said to me, "I expect you to attend the function."
- (1) He told me that he had expected me to attend the function.
- (2) He told me that he expected me to attended the function.
- (3) He told me that he expected me to have attended the function.
- (4) He told me that he expected me to attend the function.
174. He said, "Why didn't you send your application to me?"
- (1) He enquired why I had not sent my application to him.
- (2) He enquired why I did not send my application to him.
- (3) He enquired why had I not sent my application to him.
- (4) He enquired why did I not send my application to him.
175. Dinesh asked, "Are you going to the party tomorrow, Eliza?"
- (1) Dinesh asked whether Eliza was going to the party the next day.
- (2) Dinesh asked Eliza whether you are going to the party the next day.
- (3) Dinesh asked Eliza whether she was going to the party the next day.
- (4) Dinesh asked Eliza are you going to the party tomorrow.
176. John asked, "How long will it take to travel from Germany to South Africa?"
- (1) John asked how long it will take to travel from Germany to South Africa.
- (2) John asked how long would it take to travel from Germany to South Africa.
- (3) John asked how long it would take to travel from Germany to South Africa.
- (4) John was asking how long must it take to travel from Germany to South Africa.
177. "What did you see at the South Pole?" Ashok asked Anil.
- (1) Ashok asked Anil if he saw anything at the South Pole
- (2) Ashok asked Anil what he had seen at the South Pole
- (3) Ashok asked Anil what did he see at the South Pole
- (4) Ashok asked Anil that he saw anything at the South Pole
- Directions (178-187) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect form. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct form.
- (SSC FCI Assistant Grade-III Main Exam. 07.04.2013)
178. The visitor said to them "Please give me a glass of water."
- (1) The visitor said please give him a glass of water.
- (2) The visitor said to them to give him a glass of water.
- (3) The visitor ordered them to give a glass of water.
- (4) The visitor requested them to give him a glass of water.
179. The policeman told the students, "Do not park your vehicles here."
- (1) The policeman asked the students not park your vehicles here.
- (2) The policeman asked the students not to park their vehicles here.
- (3) The policeman asked the students not to park their vehicles there.
- (4) The policeman asked the students not to park. his vehicle here.
180. The man said, "All the boys are playing in the street."
- (1) The man told us that all the boys had been playing in the street.
- (2) The man told us that all the boys were playing in the street.
- (3) The man told us that all the boys play in the street.
- (4) The man told us that all the boys in the street are playing.
181. She said, "I am sorry, I did not write".
- (1) She apologized for I did not write.
- (2) She apologized she is sorry, she did not write.
- (3) She apologized she is sorry, she has not written.
- (4) She apologized that she had not written.
182. "Alright, yes, I was wrong and you were right", he said.
- (1) He admitted that he has been wrong and I have been right.
- (2) He admitted that I was wrong and you were right.
- (3) He admitted that I was wrong and he was right.
- (4) He admitted that he had been wrong and I had been right.
183. Nirmal said to us, "My father gave me a purse yesterday."

- (1) Nirmal told us that my father given me a purse the previous day.
- (2) Nirmal told us that his father had given him a purse the previous day.
- (3) Nirmal told us that his father has given him a purse yesterday.
- (4) Nirmal told us that his father had given him a purse yesterday.
184. I asked my brother if he had returned the money to his friend.
- (1) Had you returned the money to my friend.
- (2) I said to my brother, "Have you return the money to his friend?"
- (3) I said to my brother, "Have you returned the money to your friend?"
- (4) Do you return the money to his friend.
185. Bala's mother : "Will you lock the door, Bala ?"
- (1) Bala's mother told Bala that he need not lock the door.
- (2) Bala's mother asked Bala if he would lock the door.
- (3) Bala's mother asked Bala if he had locked the door.
- (4) Balas mother said lock the door.
186. "Are you ready, Raju ?" Mother asked.
- (1) Mother asked Raju if he would be ready.
- (2) Mother told Raju if he was ready.
- (3) Mother asked Raju if he was ready.
- (4) Mother wanted to know from Raju if he was ready.
187. Ann told my brother, "I will meet you in your class".
- (1) Ann told my brother that he will meet her in her class.
- (2) Ann told my brother that I would meet you in your class.
- (3) Ann told my brother that she would meet him in his class.
- (4) Ann told my brother that she would meet him in her class.

Directions (188-214) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect /Direct.

(SSC Graduate Level Tier-II Exam. 29.09.2013)

188. Naren said, "Why are you still waiting here, Binod?"
- (1) Naren asked Binod why he was still waiting there.
- (2) Naren asked Binod that why he was still waiting there.
- (3) Naren asked Binod why he is still waiting there.
- (4) Naren asked Binod that why you were still waiting there.
189. "Jack fell as he'd have wished," the mother said.
- (1) The mother said that Jack had fallen as he would have wished.
- (2) The mother said that Jack fell as he had wished.
- (3) The mother said that Jack has fallen as he has wished.
- (4) The mother said that Jack had been fallen as he would have been wished.
190. "Can you see a woman seated on the bench in a park ?" Alice asked her.
- (1) Alice asked her if she can see a woman seated on the bench in a park.
- (2) Alice told her if she could see a woman seated on the bench in a park.
- (3) Alice asked her if she could see a woman seated on the bench in a park.
- (4) Alice asked her if she could have seen a woman seated on the bench in a park.
191. The king said, "My force will protect the kingdom."
- (1) The king said that his force would protect the kingdom.
- (2) The king said that the king's force will protect the kingdom.
- (3) The king ordered that our force should protect the kingdom.
- (4) The king commanded that his force will be protected the kingdom.
192. The student said, "Let me come in."
- (1) The student told that let he be allowed to come in.
- (2) The student said that if he is allowed to come in.
- (3) The student requested to let him come in.
- (4) The student requested that he might be allowed to come in.

193. He said, "Babies, drink milk."
- (1) He said that babies drink milk.
- (2) He told that babies should drink milk.
- (3) He advised the babies to drink milk.
- (4) He said that babies drank milk.
194. I said, "I came here yesterday,"
- (1) I said that I came here that day.
- (2) I said that go here yesterday.
- (3) I said that I had come there the previous day.
- (4) I say that I went there the previous day.
195. He said, "The government is writing letters,"
- (1) He said that the government is writing letters.
- (2) He said that the government was writing letters.
- (3) He said that the government will write letters.
- (4) He said that the government wrote letters.
196. He said, "I have passed the examination."
- (1) He said that he had passed the examination.
- (2) He announced that he has passed the examination.
- (3) He said that he had to pass the examination
- (4) He said that he has passed the examination
197. The doctor says, "It is better you undergo a surgery next week."
- (1) The doctor advised me to undergo a surgery the following week.
- (2) The doctor says that it is better I undergo a surgery the following week.
- (3) The doctor says that it was better I underwent a surgery the coming week.
- (4) The doctor advises that it is better I underwent a surgery the following week.
198. The teacher asked the student when he would submit his assignment.
- (1) The teacher said to the student, "When will you submit your assignment ?"

- (2) The teacher asked the student, "When will you submit his assignment?"
- (3) The teacher asked the student, "When would you submit his assignment?"
- (4) The teacher asked the student, "When would he submit his assignment?"
199. The Principal asked me whether I had informed the Chief Guest the revised schedule the day before.
- (1) The Principal said to me, "Did I inform the Chief Guest the revised schedule the day before?"
- (2) The Principal said to me, "Have I informed the Chief Guest the revised schedule the day before?"
- (3) The Principal said to me, "Have you informed the Chief Guest the revised schedule yesterday?"
- (4) The Principal said to me, "Did you inform the Chief Guest the revised schedule yesterday?"
200. "Don't play on the grass, boys," she said.
- (1) She ordered the boys "Don't play on the grass."
- (2) She said to the boys that they should not play on the grass.
- (3) She told the boys that they should not be playing on the grass.
- (4) She told the boys not to play on the grass.
201. "What a terrible storm it is!" he said.
- (1) He exclaimed that it was a terrible storm.
- (2) He exclaimed that it has been a terrible storm.
- (3) He exclaimed that it will be a terrible storm.
- (4) He exclaimed that it is a terrible storm.
202. The traveller said, "What a beautiful sight!"
- (1) The traveller exclaimed that it was an beautiful sight.
- (2) The traveller exclaimed that it was a beautiful sight.
- (3) The traveller said that it was beautiful.
- (4) The traveller remarked the beautiful sight.
203. The Chief Guest said, "It gives me great pleasure to be here this morning."
- (1) The Chief Guest said that that gave me great pleasure to be there that morning.
- (2) The Chief Guest said that it gave him great pleasure to be there that morning.
- (3) The Chief Guest said that it gives him great pleasure to be here that morning.
- (4) The Chief Guest said that it gives him great pleasure to be there that morning.
204. He said, "What a lovely voice she has!"
- (1) He exclaimed that she had a very lovely voice.
- (2) He exclaimed that she has a very lovely voice.
- (3) He exclaimed that she did not have a lovely voice.
- (4) He exclaimed that she does not have a lovely voice.
205. He said to me, "Where is the post office?"
- (1) He asked me that where the post office was.
- (2) He asked me where was the post office.
- (3) He wanted to know where the post office was.
- (4) He asked me where the post office was.
206. My father said, "Honesty is the best policy."
- (1) My father stated that honesty was the best policy.
- (2) My father said that honesty is the best policy.
- (3) My father said that honesty was the best policy.
- (4) My father said that honesty has been the best policy.
207. She yelled, "Please help me."
- (1) She yelled at one for some help.
- (2) She yelled for someone to help.
- (3) She yelled for someone to help her.
- (4) She yelled at someone to help her.
208. He asked me why I was late.
- (1) He asked me, "Why are you late?"
- (2) He asked me, "Why I was late?"
- (3) He asked me, "Why you are late?"
- (4) He asked me, "Why am I late?"
209. He said that I needn't wait there.
- (1) He said, "You needn't wait here."
- (2) He said, "I needn't wait there."
- (3) He said, "You needn't wait there."
- (4) He said, "I needn't wait here."
210. I said to the worker, "How do you like your job?"
- (1) I told the worker how he liked his job.
- (2) I asked the worker how you like your job.
- (3) I asked the worker how he liked his job.
- (4) I asked the worker how you liked his job.
211. "I don't know why they haven't signed the papers and accepted the gift," said Crene to me.
- (1) Crene told me that he didn't know why they hadn't signed the papers and accepted the gift.
- (2) Crene told me that he don't know why they haven't signed the papers and accepted the gift.
- (3) Crene told me that I don't know why they haven't signed the papers and accepted the gift.
- (4) Crene said to me that he didn't know why they hadn't signed the papers and accepted the gift.
212. She said, "I must have a computer to prepare a powerpoint presentation."
- (1) She said she had to have a computer to prepare a powerpoint presentation.
- (2) She said she should have a computer to prepare a power point presentation.
- (3) She said she would have a computer to prepare a powerpoint presentation.
- (4) She said she could have a computer to prepare a powerpoint presentation.
213. "Don't hesitate to clear your doubts," the teacher said.

- (1) The teacher warned me not to hesitate in clearing my doubts.
 (2) The teacher ordered me not to hesitate in clearing my doubts.
 (3) The teacher persuaded me not to hesitate in clearing my doubts.
 (4) The teacher requested me not to hesitate in clearing my doubts.

214. He said, "I am glad to be here this evening."

- (1) He said that he was glad to be there that evening.
 (2) He said he was glad to be here this evening.
 (3) He says he was glad to be here this evening.
 (4) He asked he is glad to be here this evening.

Directions (215-219) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct.

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 20.10.2013)

215. Mrs. Shankar said, "I know what it is to be depressed."

- (1) Mrs. Shankar said that she was knowing what it was to be depressed.
 (2) Mrs. Shankar said that she knew what it was to be depressed.
 (3) Mrs. Shankar knows what it is to be depressed.
 (4) Mrs. Shankar is depressed she said.

216. "Who now," they had asked, "will listen to our troubles and protect us from the crocodiles?"

- (1) They wanted to know who will listen to their troubles and protect them from the crocodiles.
 (2) They had wanted to know who would listen to their troubles and protect them from the crocodiles.
 (3) They had wanted to know who then would listen to their troubles and protect them from the crocodiles.
 (4) They had wanted to know who will now listen to their troubles and protect them from the crocodiles.

217. Moti asked Gangu whether the latter was in his senses.

- (1) "Are you senseless, Gangu?" asked Moti.
 (2) "Hey Gangu, are you in your senses now?" asked Moti
 (3) "Gangu, have you lost your senses" asked Moti.
 (4) "Gangu, are you in your senses?" asked Moti

218. He said that we are all born to die.

- (1) He said, "We have all been born to die."
 (2) He exclaimed, "We were all born to die."
 (3) He said, "We were all born to die."
 (4) He said, "We are all born to die."

219. He said to me, "I grew these carrots myself."

- (1) He told me that he grew those carrots himself.
 (2) He told me I grew these carrots myself.
 (3) He told me that he grew these carrots himself.
 (4) He told me that he had grown those carrots himself.

Directions (220-224) : In the following questions, sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct.

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 27.10.2013, IInd Sitting)

220. Israt said to Irfat, "Let's go to Puri for a change."

- (1) Israt proposed to Irfat to go to Puri for a change.
 (2) Israt suggested to Irfat to go to Puri for a change.
 (3) Israt asked Irfat to go to Puri for a change.
 (4) Israt proposed to Irfat that they should go to Puri for a change.

221. The poor beggar said, "O God, have mercy on my soul".

- (1) The poor beggar prayed to God to have mercy on his soul.
 (2) The poor beggar, invoking God, implored him to have mercy on his soul.
 (3) The poor beggar exclaimed that God, have mercy on his soul.

(4) The poor beggar told God to have mercy on his soul.

222. He said to her, "Why didn't you put on the brakes?"

- (1) He asked her why she hadn't put on the brakes.
 (2) He asked her why she didn't put on the brake.
 (3) He asked her that why she hadn't put on the brake.
 (4) He told her that why she hadn't put on the brake.

223. She said to me, "I took breakfast in the morning."

- (1) She told me that she took breakfast in the morning.
 (2) She told me that she had taken breakfast in the morning.
 (3) She told me that she has taken breakfast in the morning.
 (4) She said to me that she was taking breakfast in the morning.

224. John's father reminded him to take his umbrella.

- (1) John's father said, "Remember your umbrella John?"
 (2) "Here, is your umbrella John," said his father.
 (3) "Are you going to take your umbrella or not?" said John to his father.
 (4) "Don't forget to take your umbrella, John" said his father.

Directions (225-229) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct /Indirect. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect /Direct.

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 10.11.2013, Ist Sitting)

225. He said, "He took tea in the morning".

- (1) He said that he did take in the morning.
 (2) He said that he had taken tea in the morning.
 (3) He said that he took in the morning.
 (4) He said that he would take tea in the morning.

226. He requested the boss to let him go on with his project.

- (1) He said to the boss, "You better let me go on with my project".
- (2) He told the boss, "Please go on with my project".
- (3) He said to the boss, "Let me go on with my project please".
- (4) He told the boss, "Go on with my project please".
227. I told her, "It was raining last night when you left".
- (1) I told her that it had been raining the previous night when she had left.
- (2) I told her that it has raining last night when she left.
- (3) I told her that it has been raining the night before when she left.
- (4) I told her that it had been raining last night when she had left.
228. He said, "I shall try to bring you the books tomorrow".
- (1) He said that he should try to bring me the books the next day.
- (2) He said that he would try to bring me the books the next day.
- (3) He said that he would try to bring me the books tomorrow.
- (4) He said that he should try to bring me the books tomorrow.
229. He said, "Alas ! The little puppy is run over by the car".
- (1) He exclaimed, alas, the little puppy was run over by the car.
- (2) He exclaimed sadly that the little puppy was run over by the car.
- (3) He exclaimed sadly that the little puppy had been run over by the car.
- (4) He exclaimed sadly that the little puppy is run over by the car.

Directions (230-234) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct.

(SSC (10+2) Level Data Entry Operator & LDC Exam. 10.11.2013, IIInd Sitting)

230. Suresh asked Prasad whether he had watched the cricket match on television the previous night.

- (1) Suresh said to Prasad, "Did you watched the cricket match on television last night?"
- (2) Suresh asked Prasad, "Did you watch the cricket match on television previous night?"
- (3) Suresh asked Prasad, "Have you watched the cricket match on television last night?"
- (4) Suresh said to Prasad, "Did you watch the cricket match on television last night?"
231. Father said to me, "You are idling away your time."
- (1) Father told me that you were idling away your time.
- (2) Father told me that I was idling away my time.
- (3) Father told me that I am idling away my time.
- (4) Father told me that you are idling away your time.
232. The captain said to his men, "Fall into line."
- (1) The captain said to his men that they can fall into line.
- (2) The captain commanded his men to fall into line.
- (3) The captain warned his men to fall into line.
- (4) The captain told his men that they should fall into line.
233. The priest said, "May God pardon this sinner !"
- (1) The priest prayed that God would pardon this sinner.
- (2) The priest prayed that God might pardon that sinner.
- (3) The priest prayed if God will pardon that sinner.
- (4) The priest said that God might pardon the sinner.
234. Ashmita advised me to go and see a doctor.
- (1) "Shouldn't you go and see a doctor ?" asked Ashmita.
- (2) "You should go and see a doctor," said Ashmita.
- (3) Ashmita asked me, "Will you go and see a doctor ?"
- (4) Ashmita told me, "Go and see a doctor."

Directions (235-261) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select

the one which best expresses the same sentence in Direct/Indirect as your answer.

(SSC GL Tier-II Exam. 21.09.2014)

235. She said to me, "It has been raining heavily and you cannot go".
- (1) She told me that it had been raining heavily and I could not go.
- (2) She told me that it was raining heavily and I could not go.
- (3) She told me that it has been raining heavily and I could not go.
- (4) She told me that it is raining heavily and I could not go.
236. John said to me, "Where have you been last night ?"
- (1) John asked me where had I been the previous night.
- (2) John asked me where I have been the previous night.
- (3) John asked me where I am the previous night.
- (4) John asked me where I had been the previous night.
237. "I'm taking my children to the zoo tomorrow", she said, "to see the baby white tiger".
- (1) She said that she will take the children to the zoo to see the baby white tiger tomorrow.
- (2) She said that she would take the children to the zoo the next day to see the baby white tiger.
- (3) She said that she was taking her children to the zoo the next day to see the baby white tiger.
- (4) She said that she was taking the children to the zoo that day to see the baby white tiger.
238. She said, "Mother, please cook me something nice today".
- (1) She told her mother to cook her something nice today.
- (2) She ordered her mother to cook her something nice that day.
- (3) She requested her mother to cook her something nice that day.
- (4) She asked her mother if she could cook her something nice that day.
239. John said, "I shall be 21 tomorrow".

- | | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>(1) John said that he would be 21 tomorrow.</p> <p>(2) John said that he would be 21 the following day.</p> <p>(3) John said that he should be 21 the following day.</p> <p>(4) John said that I shall be 21 tomorrow.</p> <p>240. She asked, "Is the secretary coming to the meeting?"</p> <p>(1) She asked that the secretary was coming to the meeting.</p> <p>(2) She asked that if the secretary was coming to the meeting.</p> <p>(3) She asked if the secretary is coming to the meeting.</p> <p>(4) She asked if the secretary was coming to the meeting.</p> <p>241. The convict said, "Let me speak freely please".</p> <p>(1) The convict suggested that he must be allowed to speak freely.</p> <p>(2) The convict requested that he must be allowed to speak freely.</p> <p>(3) The convict requested that he be allowed to speak freely.</p> <p>(4) The convict proposed that he might be allowed to speak freely.</p> <p>242. Nisha told Monica, "What a beautiful dress you are wearing!"</p> <p>(1) Nisha exclaimed that Monica was wearing a very beautiful dress.</p> <p>(2) Nisha exclaimed that it is a very beautiful dress.</p> <p>(3) Nisha exclaimed that Monica is wearing a very beautiful dress.</p> <p>(4) Nisha told Monica that was a beautiful dress.</p> <p>243. "Call the witness", said the magistrate.</p> <p>(1) The magistrate requested to call the witness.</p> <p>(2) The magistrate begged for calling the witness.</p> <p>(3) The magistrate ordered to call the witness.</p> <p>(4) The magistrate prayed to call the witness.</p> <p>244. "Have you done this sort of work before?" said his new employer.</p> <p>(1) His new employer asked him whether he has done that sort of work before.</p> | <p>(2) His new employer asked him whether he has done this sort of work before.</p> <p>(3) His new employer asked him whether he had done that sort of work before.</p> <p>(4) His new employer asked him whether he had done this sort of work before.</p> <p>245. Rahul says that Azhar loves cricket.</p> <p>(1) Rahul said, "Azhar loves cricket".</p> <p>(2) Rahul said, "Azhar loved cricket".</p> <p>(3) Rahul says, "Azhar loved cricket".</p> <p>(4) Rahul says, "Azhar loves cricket".</p> <p>246. "I came home last night", said he.</p> <p>(1) He told that he had come home last night.</p> <p>(2) He said that he came home last night.</p> <p>(3) He said that he had come home the previous night.</p> <p>(4) He says that he came home the previous night.</p> <p>247. The beggar said, "Poverty is a great curse".</p> <p>(1) The beggar said poverty has a great curse.</p> <p>(2) The beggar said that poverty is a great curse.</p> <p>(3) The beggar said that poverty was a great curse.</p> <p>(4) The beggar said that poverty had been a great curse.</p> <p>248. "If you want to smoke, you'll have to go out", said the conductor.</p> <p>(1) The conductor ordered me to go out and smoke.</p> <p>(2) The conductor said that if I/he wanted to smoke, I/he would have to go out.</p> <p>(3) The conductor told me that smoking is not permitted in the bus.</p> <p>(4) The conductor told me that I will have to go out and smoke.</p> <p>249. "Be careful; the steps are very slippery", I warned him.</p> <p>(1) I warned him to be careful as the steps were very slippery.</p> <p>(2) I warned him to be careful as the steps are very slippery.</p> | <p>(3) I warned him to be careful and steps were very slippery.</p> <p>(4) I told him to be careful and the steps are very slippery.</p> <p>250. The old lady declared that she was going to walk where she pleased. They had the liberty.</p> <p>(1) The old lady said that, "I was going to walk where I pleased. They have the liberty".</p> <p>(2) The old lady : "I am going to walk where I please. We have the liberty".</p> <p>(3) The old lady : "I was going to walk where I pleased. They have the liberty".</p> <p>(4) The old lady : "I am going to walk where I pleased. They had the liberty".</p> <p>251. The teacher asked me why I had been absent the day before.</p> <p>(1) The teacher asked me, "Why were you absent yesterday?"</p> <p>(2) The teacher asked me, "Why are you absent yesterday?"</p> <p>(3) The teacher asked me, "Why are you absent the day before?"</p> <p>(4) The teacher asked me, "Were you absent the day before?"</p> <p>252. Mr Robinson asked his son what he wanted to be when he grew up.</p> <p>(1) "My son," said Mr Robinson, "what will you be when you grow up?"</p> <p>(2) "My son," said Mr Robinson, "what do you want to be when you grow up?"</p> <p>(3) Mr Robinson said, "My son, what did you want to be when you grew up?"</p> <p>(4) Mr Robinson said, "My son, what would you be when you grow up?"</p> <p>253. The boys respectfully wished their teacher good morning.</p> <p>(1) "Good morning," said the boys to their teacher.</p> <p>(2) "Good morning," said the boys to the teacher.</p> <p>(3) "Good morning, Madam," said the boys to the teacher.</p> <p>(4) "Good morning, Madam," said the boys to their teacher.</p> <p>254. She said, "I am sorry, I am not able to submit those papers".</p> <p>(1) She said she was sorry, she is not able to submit those papers.</p> |
|--|--|--|

- (2) She said that she was sorry and she will not be able to submit those papers.
- (3) She apologized for not being able to submit those papers.
- (4) She exclaimed with sorrow that she was sorry and she will not be able to submit those papers.
255. The girl wondered where the sparrows had gone.
- (1) The girl said, "Oh! Where the sparrows have gone?"
- (2) The girl said, "Oh! Where are the sparrows?"
- (3) The girl said, "Oh! Where had the sparrows gone?"
- (4) The girl said, "Oh! Where have the sparrows gone?"
256. She said to me, "I'm going shopping. Can I get you something?"
- (1) She said she was going shopping and said to me if I wanted something.
- (2) She said she was going shopping and asked if I wanted something.
- (3) She said she was going shopping and asked if she could get me something.
- (4) She said she is going shopping and asked if she could get me something.
257. Ramesh informed his friend that he could make use of his car while he was away.
- (1) Ramesh said to his friend, "You will make use of my car while I was away".
- (2) Ramesh said to his friend, "Use my car while I go away".
- (3) Ramesh said to his friend, "You can make use of my car while I am away".
- (4) Ramesh asked his friend, "Will you make use of my car while I am away?"
258. Kala said to Radha, "Who were you speaking to over the phone?"
- (1) Kala asked Radha who she had been speaking to over the phone.
- (2) Kala asked Radha who she has been speaking to over the phone.
- (3) Kala asked Radha that who she was speaking to over the phone.

- (4) Kala asked Radha that who she had been speaking to over the phone.
259. The king said to his men, "Do not be afraid of the enemy. Face them bravely."
- (1) The king ordered his men to not be afraid of the enemy and that they had to be faced bravely.
- (2) The king asked his men to not be afraid of the enemy but they should be faced bravely.
- (3) The king advised his men not to be afraid of the enemy but to face them bravely.
- (4) The king told his men not to be afraid of the enemy and they had faced them bravely.
260. Kannan said to Subha, "I'll return the book after I have read it".
- (1) Kannan told Subha that he will return the book after he has read it.
- (2) Kannan told Subha that he would return the book after he has read it.
- (3) Kannan told Subha that he will return the book after he read it.
- (4) Kannan told Subha that he would return the book after he had read it.
261. The boss said to his secretary, "Did you discuss this matter with the manager?"
- (1) The boss asked his secretary whether he discussed that matter with the manager.
- (2) The boss asked his secretary if you have discussed that matter with the manager.
- (3) The boss asked his secretary if he had discussed that matter with the manager.
- (4) The boss asked his secretary whether he has discussed that matter with the manager.

Directions (262–288) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Direct/Indirect and mark your answer.

- (SSC CGL Tier-II Exam. 12.04.2015)
262. I said to him, 'Will you go to Delhi?'
- (1) I asked him will he go to Delhi.

- (2) I said to him would he go to Delhi.
- (3) I asked him if he would go to Delhi.
- (4) I said to him would you go to Delhi.
263. He said, 'I have read this novel.'
- (1) He said that he has read this novel.
- (2) He said that he had read that novel.
- (3) He said that he read that novel.
- (4) He said that he had read this novel.
264. Tania said to her friend, 'Can you lend me an umbrella?'
- (1) Please give me an umbrella Tania requested her friend.
- (2) Will you lend me your umbrella, Tania asked her friend.
- (3) Tania requested her friend to lend her an umbrella
- (4) Tania asked her friend to give her an umbrella.
265. Sita said, 'I may go there.'
- (1) Sita says that she may go there.
- (2) Sita says that she is going there.
- (3) Sita said that she will go there.
- (4) Sita said that she might go there.
266. My friend requested me to bring him a sandwich.
- (1) He said, 'My friend, please bring me a sandwich.'
- (2) My friend said, 'Will you bring me a sandwich.'
- (3) 'Please bring me a sandwich', said my friend.
- (4) 'Please bring my friend a sandwich.', said he.
267. He said, 'If I had the tools I could mend the car.'
- (1) He said that if he had the tools he could mend the car.
- (2) He tells that he had the tools he could mend the car.
- (3) He said I could mend the car if I have the tools.
- (4) He told he could mend the car.
268. She said to the children, 'You mustn't play with fire.'
- (1) She told the children they were not to play with fire.
- (2) She told the children that they mustn't play with fire.

- (3) She told the children not to play with fire.
 (4) She told the children they are not to play with fire.
269. Everybody says, 'How well she sings!'
 (1) Everybody comments that she sings well.
 (2) Everybody says how well she sings.
 (3) Everybody tells that she sang very well.
 (4) Everybody says that she sang well.
270. He says that he is very sorry.
 (1) He said, 'He was very sorry'.
 (2) He says, 'I am very sorry'.
 (3) He said, 'He is very sorry'.
 (4) He told me, 'I felt sorry'.
271. Daman says, 'Priya is working in Ahmedabad.'
 (1) Daman say that Priya was working in Ahmedabad.
 (2) Daman said that Priya was working in Ahmedabad.
 (3) Daman said that Priya works in Ahmedabad.
 (4) Daman says that Priya is working in Ahmedabad.
272. Anne said, 'It is time to leave for the meeting.'
 (1) Anne said that it was time to leave for the meeting.
 (2) Anne told that it is time to leave for the meeting.
 (3) Anne said its time to leave for the meeting.
 (4) Anne said that it was time for the meeting.
273. The old man said that he would soon be leaving the world.
 (1) The old man said, "I shall soon be leaving the world."
 (2) The old man said, "I am soon leaving the world."
 (3) The old man said, "I would soon leave the world."
 (4) The old man said, "I am going to leave the world soon."
274. "Come home early" said MrMatthew to his clerk.
 (1) Mr Matthew told his clerk to come home as early as possible.
 (2) Mr Matthew asked his clerk to be home early.
 (3) Mr Matthew ordered his clerk to come home early.
- (4) Mr Matthew requested his clerk to come home a little early.
275. I said, "Water is essential for life."
 (1) Water is essential for life was said by me.
 (2) I told that water was essential for life.
 (3) I exclaimed that water was essential for life.
 (4) I said that water is essential for life.
276. She asked me if I was going to college.
 (1) She said, "Am I going to college?"
 (2) She said to me, "Are you going to college?"
 (3) She asked me, "Will you go to college?"
 (4) She asked to me, "Was I going to college?"
277. Iba said that she might go home the next day with her sister.
 (1) Iba said, "I could go home tomorrow with my sister."
 (2) Iba said, "I may just go home tomorrow with my sister."
 (3) Iba said, "I can go home tomorrow with my sister."
 (4) Iba said, "I will go home tomorrow with my sister."
278. He said, "I was doing it."
 (1) He said that he had been doing it.
 (2) He said that he had done it.
 (3) He said that he has done it.
 (4) He said that he did it.
279. The lady asked me how my uncle was.
 (1) The lady said to me, "How is your uncle?"
 (2) The lady asked me, "How has your uncle been?"
 (3) The lady said to me, "How was your uncle?"
 (4) The lady asked me, "How is your uncle doing?"
280. He said, "Honesty is the best policy."
 (1) He said that honesty is the best policy.
 (2) He said that honesty was the best policy.
 (3) He said that honesty had been the best policy.
 (4) He said that honesty has been the best policy.
281. He said that he intended to leave for Surat that night.
 (1) "I intend to leave for Surat that night" he said.
 (2) "I intend to left for Surat that night" he said.
 (3) "I intended to leave for Surat tonight" he said.
 (4) "I intend to leave for Surat tonight" he said.
282. The teacher said to him, "Is poverty not a curse?"
 (1) The teacher asked him is poverty not a curse.
 (2) The teacher asked him if poverty was not a curse.
 (3) The teacher asked him was poverty not a curse.
 (4) The teacher asked him whether poverty is not a curse.
283. The prisoner enquired if a lawyer had been arranged for him.
 (1) The prisoner enquired, "Is there a lawyer for me?"
 (2) The prisoner asked, "Has a lawyer been arranged for me?"
 (3) The prisoner enquired, "Had a lawyer been arranged for me?"
 (4) The prisoner said, "Have you arranged a lawyer for me?"
284. Phila ordered her brother to turn down the television and let her work in peace.
 (1) Phila said to her brother, "Turn down the television that let me do my work in peace."
 (2) Phila said to her brother, "Turn down the television and let me work in peace."
 (3) Phila said to her brother, "Turn down the television to let me do my work in peace."
 (4) Phila said to her brother, "Turned down the television and let me do my work in peace."
285. You will say, "I am ill."
 (1) You will say that you are ill.
 (2) You would say that you were ill.
 (3) You would say that you are ill.
 (4) You will say that you were ill.
286. He bade his friends goodbye.
 (1) "I will see you later" he told his friends.

- (2) "I am bidding you Goodbye."
 (3) He said, "Goodbye, my friends."
 (4) "Goodbye, my friends" he was saying to them.
287. He exclaimed with joy that their team had won the tournament.
 (1) He said, "Our team has won the tournament."
 (2) He said, "Wow! Our team won the tournament."
 (3) He exclaimed, "Hurrah! Our team has won the tournament!"
 (4) He said, "Our team won the tournament."
288. His father said that it was time he visited his uncle.
 (1) "It was time you visited your uncle" said his father.
 (2) "It is time you visited my uncle" said his father.
 (3) "It is time you visit your uncle" said his father.
 (4) "It is time you visited your uncle" said his father.

Directions (289-315) : In each of the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Direct/Indirect.

(SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam. 28.09.2014
 TF No. 482 RN 5)

289. The project manager asked Vivek, "How much time will you take to finish this project?"
 (1) The project manager asked Vivek how much time would he take to finish that project.
 (2) The project manager enquired of Vivek how much time he would take to finish that project.
 (3) The project manager enquired of Vivek how much time he will be taking to finish that project.
 (4) The project manager asked Vivek how much time he would take to finish this project.
290. The ox asked the dog not to sit there.
 (1) The ox said to the dog, "Not to sit here."
 (2) The ox said to the dog, "Do not sit here."

- (3) The ox said to the dog, "Does not sit here."
 (4) The ox said to the dog, "Did not sit here."
291. He said, "I am writing a poem."
 (1) He said that I am writing a poem.
 (2) He said that he is writing a poem.
 (3) He said that the poem is being written.
 (4) He said that he was writing a poem.
292. He said, "Asha washed the clothes."
 (1) He said that Asha washed the clothes.
 (2) He said that clothes were washed by Asha.
 (3) He said that Asha had washed the clothes.
 (4) He said that Asha has washed the clothes.
293. Martha said, "I am going to Mexico next year."
 (1) Martha said that she had been going to Mexico next year.
 (2) Martha said that she was going to Mexico next year.
 (3) Martha said that she had gone to Mexico next year.
 (4) Martha said that she will be going to Mexico next year.
294. My mother said to me, "Wish you a happy and prosperous life!"
 (1) My mother wished me a happy and prosperous life.
 (2) My mother told me that I should lead a happy and prosperous life.
 (3) My mother wished that I enjoy a happy and prosperous life.
 (4) My mother wished that I should be living a happy and prosperous life.
295. You said to me, "Why are you talking so much?"
 (1) You asked me why, he was talking so much.
 (2) You asked me why I was talking so much.
 (3) You asked me why was I talking so much.
 (4) You asked me why I had been talking so much.

296. Sandy said, "I have already written a letter to my family."
 (1) Sandy said that she had already written a letter to her family.
 (2) Sandy said that she wrote a letter to her family.
 (3) Sandy said that she was writing a letter to her family.
 (4) Sandy said that she will write a letter to her family.
297. You said, "They were busy the whole day."
 (1) You said that they had busy the whole day.
 (2) You said that they were busy the whole day.
 (3) You said that they had been busy the whole day.
 (4) You said that they have been busy the whole day.
298. I said to her, "I will have written letters."
 (1) I told her that she will have written letters.
 (2) I told her that she would have written letters.
 (3) I told her that I will have written letters.
 (4) I told her that I would have written letters.
299. I asked him, "Will you go to Agra tomorrow?"
 (1) I asked him whether I would go to Agra the next day.
 (2) I asked him whether he would go to Agra the next day.
 (3) I asked him whether you would go to Agra the next day.
 (4) I asked him whether he will go to Agra the next day.
300. I asked him where he would stay.
 (1) I said to him, "Where you will stay?"
 (2) I asked him, "Where will you stay?"
 (3) I said to him, "Where I will stay?"
 (4) I said to him, "Where will I stay?"
301. He said to his son, "Do not smoke."
 (1) He advised his son do not smoke.
 (2) He advised his son to not smoke.

- (3) He advised his son not to smoke.
- (4) He advised his son that he should not smoke.
302. She said, "I will now take rest for some time."
- (1) She said that I would now take rest for some time.
- (2) She said that she will then take rest for some time.
- (3) She said that she would then take rest for some time.
- (4) She said that he will then take rest for some time.
303. The receptionist said to Umesh, "Please be seated and wait for your turn."
- (1) The receptionist requested Umesh that be seated and wait for his turn.
- (2) The receptionist told Umesh to please be seated and wait for his turn.
- (3) The receptionist requested Umesh that he should be seated and wait for his turn.
- (4) The receptionist requested Umesh to be seated and to wait for his turn.
304. He exclaimed that it was a very graceful animal.
- (1) He exclaimed, "What a graceful animal!"
- (2) He observed, "It is a very graceful animal."
- (3) He said, "Alas! What a graceful animal it is!"
- (4) He said, "It is indeed a graceful animal."
305. Caroline said, "Will you come to my party on Saturday" ?
- (1) Caroline asked that I come to her party on Saturday.
- (2) Caroline told to come to her party on Saturday.
- (3) Caroline asked if I would come to her party on Saturday.
- (4) Caroline said I should come to her party on Saturday.
306. Babu said, "I've told my friends you'll be here."
- (1) Babu said that he had told his friends that I would be here.
- (2) Babu said that he has told his friends that I will be here.
- (3) Babu said that he told his friend that I will be there.
- (4) Babu said that he had told his friends that I would be there.
307. He said to me, "I will have been digging the ground for half an hour".
- (1) He told me that he will have been digging the ground for half an hour.
- (2) He told me that I will have been digging the ground for half an hour.
- (3) He told me that he would have been digging the ground for half an hour.
- (4) He told me that I would have been digging the ground for half an hour.
308. Monica Cheng asked Roeun, "Are you going to visit Germany ?"
- (1) Monica Cheng asked Roeun if he is going to visit Germany.
- (2) Monica Cheng asked Roeun if he had visited Germany.
- (3) Monica Cheng asked Roeun if had gone to Germany.
- (4) Monica Cheng asked Roeun if he was going to visit Germany.
309. You said to me, "I am going to America".
- (1) You told me that I was going to America.
- (2) You said me that you were going to America.
- (3) You told me that you were going to America.
- (4) You told me I was going to America.
310. You said to me, "She is my sister".
- (1) You said to me that she was my sister.
- (2) You told me that she was your sister.
- (3) You said to me that I was her sister.
- (4) You said to me that she is my sister.
311. The Professor said, "Have you cleared your last semester papers ?"
- (1) The Professor asked whether I cleared my last semester papers.
- (2) The Professor asked if I had cleared my previous semester papers.
- (3) The Professor asked whether I have cleared my last semester papers.
- (4) The Professor asked if I have cleared my previous semester papers.
312. The traffic constable said to us, "Stop".
- (1) The traffic constable ordered us to stop.
- (2) We were asked by the traffic constable to stop.
- (3) The traffic constable requested us to stop.
- (4) The traffic constable ordered that we were made to stop.
313. "I went for a long walk yesterday", said Monikaviya.
- (1) Monikaviya said that I went for a long walk yesterday.
- (2) Monikaviya said that she had gone for a long walk the day before.
- (3) Monikaviya said that she had gone for a long walk yesterday.
- (4) Monikaviya said that she went for a long walk the day before.
314. "Alas ! How I have wasted my fortune!" said he.
- (1) He confessed with regret that he had been wasting his fortune.
- (2) He confessed with regret that he had been very extravagant.
- (3) He confessed with regret that I have wasted my fortune.
- (4) He confessed with regret that he had wasted his fortune.
315. Mr. Ronald said, "Don't vote for Otis because he is irresponsible".
- (1) Mr. Ronald said not to vote for Otis because he was irresponsible.
- (2) Mr. Ronald told us don't vote for Otis because he isn't irresponsible.
- (3) Mr. Ronald told us not to vote for Otis because he lacked responsibility.
- (4) Mr. Ronald told us not to vote for Otis because he had been irresponsible.

Directions (316–342) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Direct/Indirect.

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam.12.04.2015
Kolkata Region, TF No. 315 RI 3)

316. He said, "I had a wonderful dream last night".
(1) He said that he saw a wonderful dream last night.
(2) He said that he had seen a wonderful dream yesterday.
(3) He said that last night he had a wonderful dream.
(4) He said that he had a wonderful dream the previous night.
317. He said, "I am buying a new pen".
(1) He said that he bought a new pen.
(2) He said that he was buying a new pen.
(3) He said that he had been buying a new pen.
(4) He said that he is buying a new pen
318. He bade his love goodbye.
(1) He said, "Goodbye".
(2) He wished his love, "Goodbye".
(3) He exclaimed, "Goodbye, love".
(4) He said, "Goodbye, my love".
319. "You did not return your book yesterday," said the librarian.
(1) The librarian said that he had not returned his book the previous day.
(2) The librarian said that he had not returned his book yesterday.
(3) The librarian said the book not been returned the previous day.
(4) The librarian said that you had not returned your book yesterday.
320. "You are all doing very well," said Mr. Jones.
(1) Mr. Jones said that we are all doing well.
(2) Mr. Jones said that they were all doing well.
(3) Mr. Jones said that they were all doing very well.
(4) Mr. Jones said that you are all doing very well.
321. "I finished it several days ago," said Jack.
(1) Jack said that he finished it several days previously.
(2) Jack said that he had finished it several days earlier.
(3) Jack said that he finished it several days earlier.
(4) Jack said that he finish it several days ago.
322. "I gave the packet to Tom, who kept it a long time," said Pamela.
(1) Pamela said that she had gave the packet to Tom, who kept it a long time.
(2) Pamela said that she had given the packet to Tom, to keep for a long time.
(3) Pamela said that she had given the packet to Tom, who kept it a long time.
(4) Pamela said that she had given the packet to Tom, who kept it for long time.
323. "I was digging the garden when the doctor arrived," replied Harry.
(1) Harry said that he was digging the garden when the doctor arrived.
(2) Harry said that he had been digging the garden when the doctor arrived.
(3) Harry said that he had been digging the garden when the doctor arrive.
(4) Harry says that he was digging the garden when the doctor arrived.
324. "I would have been surprised if you had passed the examination," said the former master.
(1) The former master said that it would have surprised him if I had passed.
(2) The former master was surprised if I passed the examination.
(3) The former master said that he should be surprised if I had passed.
(4) The former master said that he would have been surprised if I had passed the examination.
325. "I will put this key here." said the caretaker.
(1) The caretaker says that he would put the key there.
- (2) The caretaker said that he will put the key there.
(3) The caretaker said that he would put the key there.
(4) The caretaker says that he would put the key here.
326. "I shall go tomorrow," he said.
(1) He said that he would go the next day.
(2) He said that he shall go the next day.
(3) He said that he should go tomorrow.
(4) He said that he would go tomorrow.
327. Walter said, "I cannot do it now".
(1) Walter says that he cannot do it now.
(2) Walter said that he could not do it now.
(3) Walter says that he cannot do it then.
(4) Walter said that he could not do it then.
328. The master said that he would see me the next day.
(1) "You will be seen by me tomorrow," said the master.
(2) "I will see you tomorrow," said the master.
(3) "Tomorrow, I will see you," says the master.
(4) "I will be seeing you tomorrow," said the master.
329. Father told Peter to clean his shoes.
(1) "Clean your shoes, Peter," says father.
(2) "Clean your shoes, Peter," told father.
(3) "Clean your shoes, Peter," asked father.
(4) "Clean your shoes, Peter," said father.
330. The girl said, "How happy I am !"
(1) The girl exclaimed that she is very happy.
(2) The girl said how happy she was.
(3) The girl said that she is very happy.
(4) The girl exclaimed that she was very happy.
331. Mohan says that the teacher is not at home.
(1) Mohan said, "Teacher is not at home."

- (2) Mohan said, "Teacher was not at home."
 (3) Mohan says, "Teacher is not at home."
 (4) Mohan says, "Teacher was not at home."
332. He said, "I have done my job."
 (1) He said that he had been doing his job.
 (2) He said that he has done his job.
 (3) He said that he had done his job.
 (4) He said that he have done his job.
333. The student said, "I am doing my homework."
 (1) The student said that she was doing her homework.
 (2) The student said that she did her homework.
 (3) The student said that she has been doing her homework.
 (4) The student said that she is doing her homework.
334. I said to the boy, "You have no ticket, get out before you are driven out."
 (1) I told the boy get out before you are driven out.
 (2) I told the boy that he had no ticket and that he should get out before he was driven out.
 (3) I told the boy to get out before he was driven out as he had no ticket.
 (4) I ordered the boy to get out before he was driven out.
335. Amelia is going to ask the principal for permission to go on a study tour.
 (1) Amelia is going to say to the principal, "Might we have your permission to go on a study tour ?"
 (2) Amelia is going to say to the principal, "Would we have your permission to go on a study tour ?"
 (3) Amelia is going to say to the principal, "Should we have your permission to go on a study tour ?"
 (4) Amelia is going to say to the principal, "May we have your permission to go on a study tour ?"
336. Janet exclaimed that she had lost all her belongings at the airport that morning.

- (1) Janet said, "I had to lose all my belongings at the airport this morning."
 (2) Janet said, "I lost all my belongings at the airport this morning."
 (3) Janet said, "I lost all my belongings at the airport that morning."
 (4) Janet said, "I had lost all my belongings at the airport that morning."
337. Thomas said that he would meet Andy the following Monday and asked if 1 O'clock suited him.
 (1) Thomas said to Andy, "I will meet you the following Monday. Will 1 O'clock suit you ?"
 (2) Thomas said to Andy, "Andy, I would meet you the following Monday. Will 1 O'clock suit you ?"
 (3) Thomas said to Andy, "Andy, I am going to meet you the following Monday. Does 1 O'clock suit you ?"
 (4) Thomas said to Andy, "Andy, I will have to meet you the following Monday. Is 1 O'clock suiting you ?"
338. Sanda said that she used to know a lot of people in Delhi but that she had fewer friends in Kolkata.
 (1) Sanda said, "I had known a lot of people in Delhi but I had few friends in Kolkata."
 (2) Sanda said, "I had got to know a lot of people in Delhi but I had few friends in Kolkata."
 (3) Sanda said, "I have known a lot of people in Delhi but I had few friends in Kolkata."
 (4) Sanda said, "I used to know a lot of people in Delhi but I have fewer friends in Kolkata."
339. Mary said, "I am sorry."
 (1) Mary said that she was sorry.
 (2) Mary said that she is sorry.
 (3) Mary said that she will be sorry.
 (4) Mary says that she is sorry.
340. He said to me, "What are you doing ?"
 (1) He asked me what I was doing.
 (2) He asked me what I am doing.

- (3) He asked me what am I doing.
 (4) He said to me what I was doing.
341. The Technician told us how to maintain the machine in good working order.
 (1) The technician said to us, "There is how you maintained the machine in good working order."
 (2) The technician said to us, "This is how you maintained the machine in good working order."
 (3) The technician said "This is how you maintain the machine in good working order."
 (4) The technician said to us, "That is how you maintained the machine in good working order."
342. He said to me, 'You need not worry.'
 (1) He said to me that he need not worry.
 (2) He assured me that I need not worry.
 (3) He told me that I shall need not worry.
 (4) He said to me that you need not worry.
- Directions (343&369) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect /Direct.
- (SSC CAPFs SI, CISF ASI & Delhi Police SI Exam, 30.08.2015 TF No. 4039770)
343. Vikram said to Gopal, "What did the bear tell you in your ears ?"
 (1) Vikram said to Gopal what the bear told him in his ears.
 (2) Vikram asked Gopal that what the bear tell you in your ears.
 (3) Vikram asked Gopal that what the bear told him in his ears.
 (4) Vikram asked Gopal what the bear told him in his ears.
344. Jane said to me, "Do you want to dance ?"
 (1) Jane enquires if I want to dance.

- (2) Jane said that whether I would dance.
- (3) Jane asked me if I wanted to dance.
- (4) Jane said that I would dance or not.
345. "It's a cold day today!" cried the boy.
- (1) The boy was crying as it was a cold day.
- (2) The boy exclaimed that it was cold that day than yesterday.
- (3) The boy said that he had caught cold that day.
- (4) The boy exclaimed that it was cold that day.
346. "Could I have a cup of coffee", she said.
- (1) She asked if she might have a cup of coffee.
- (2) She ordered for a cup of coffee.
- (3) She asked if she could have a cup of coffee.
- (4) She asked whether she could like to have a cup of coffee.
347. "Do your duty", the father told his son.
- (1) The father advised his son to do his duty.
- (2) The father ordered that his son should be doing duty.
- (3) The father told to his son to do his duty.
- (4) The father ordered to his son that to do his duty.
348. "Have you finished your work, Ahmad?" asked Vinod.
- (1) Vinod asked Ahmad whether he had finished his work.
- (2) Vinod asked whether Ahmad had finished your work.
- (3) Vinod asked whether Ahmad had finished work.
- (4) Vinod asked whether Ahmad had finished their work.
349. Jennifer said, "What will you do when you leave school?"
- (1) Jennifer said what she will do when she leaves school.
- (2) Jennifer asked her what she will do when she would leave school.
- (3) Jennifer asked her what she would do when she leaves school.
- (4) Jennifer asked me what you would do when you left school.
350. 'Please be patient and the letter will come', said the teacher to the student.
- (1) The patient student was asked by the teacher to wait for the letter.
- (2) The teacher said that since the student was patient, the letter will come.
- (3) The teacher asked the student to be patiently wait for the letter.
- (4) The teacher advised the student to be patient and wait for the letter.
351. 'Which way is the post office?' the lady asked.
- (1) The lady asked the way to the post office.
- (2) The lady asked which post office was on the way.
- (3) The lady said the post office was which way.
- (4) The lady asked which was the post office.
352. "Are you the manager?" I said.
- (1) I asked him whether he had been the Manager.
- (2) I asked whether you were the Manager.
- (3) I asked him whether he was the Manager.
- (4) I asked whether he is the Manager.
353. She shouted, "I am going home".
- (1) She shouted them that she is going home.
- (2) She shouted to them that she is going home.
- (3) She shouted at them that she was going home.
- (4) She shouted to them that she was going home.
354. Sucheta said, "Could you please write the project for me, Shweta?"
- (1) Sucheta requested Shweta to write the project for her.
- (2) Sucheta requested Shweta if she wrote the project for her.
- (3) Sucheta requested Shweta could write the project for her.
- (4) Sucheta requested Shweta that she had to write the project for her.
355. Reena said to Ramesh, "I'll meet you and Mohan in the restaurant."
- (1) Reena told Ramesh that she would meet her and Mohan in the restaurant.
- (2) Reena told Ramesh that he would meet her and Mohan in the restaurant.
- (3) Reena told Ramesh that she would meet him and her in the restaurant.
- (4) Reena told Ramesh that she would meet him and Mohan in the restaurant.
356. He said to his friends, "Let us play some country-music and dance."
- (1) He suggested to his friends that they should play some country-music and dance.
- (2) He said to his friends that they should be allowed to play some country-music and dance.
- (3) He asked his friends to let him have some country-music and dance.
- (4) He suggested to his friends that some country-music be played as they danced.
357. The minister announced that a new employment scheme would be implemented from the following month.
- (1) The minister said, "A new employment scheme will be implemented since the next month."
- (2) The minister said, "A new employment scheme would be implemented from the following month."
- (3) The minister made a new announcement, "An employ-

- ment scheme will be implemented from the following month."
- (4) The minister said, "A new employment scheme will be implemented next month onwards."
358. Mike said, "Don't fly via Paris."
- (1) Mike said to me if I should not fly via Paris.
- (2) Mike's command was not to fly via Paris.
- (3) Mike said that one should not fly via Paris.
- (4) Mike advised me not to fly via Paris.
359. Mr. Pradhan said, 'I shall go to Delhi tomorrow.'
- (1) Mr. Pradhan said that he should go to Delhi tomorrow.
- (2) Mr. Pradhan said that he would go to Delhi the next day.
- (3) Mr. Pradhan said that he must go to Delhi the next day.
- (4) Mr. Pradhan said that he should have gone to Delhi the next day.
360. "Saint George, strike for us!" exclaimed the Knight.
- (1) The Knight requested Saint George to strike away.
- (2) The Knight ordered Saint George to strike for them.
- (3) The Knight prayed that Saint George might strike for them.
- (4) The Knight requested Saint George that he should strike us.
361. The headmaster said to the student, "You are expelled for attempting to copy in the examination."
- (1) The headmaster remonstrated the student informing him that he was expelled for attempting to copy in the examination.
- (2) The headmaster ordered the student that he was expelled for attempting to copy in the examination.
- (3) The headmaster briefed the student that he had been expelled for attempting to copy in the examination.
- (4) The headmaster said to the student that he was expelled for attempting to copy in the examination.
362. The teacher said, "Students, look at your books."
- (1) The teacher told the students that they looked at their books.
- (2) The teacher told the students to look at their books.
- (3) The teacher said that the students will look at their books.
- (4) The teacher told the students that they might look at their books.
363. "I must hurry. My father is always furious if any one of us is late for meals", she said.
- (1) She said that she must hurry as her father was always furious if any one of them was late for meals.
- (2) She said that she should hurry as her father was always furious if any one of them were late for meals.
- (3) She said that she must hurry as her father is always furious if any one of them was late for meals.
- (4) She said that she must hurry as her father was always furious if any one of them were late for meals.
364. He said, "As your mother is ill, you must leave at once."
- (1) He told him that as his mother was ill, he should leave at once.
- (2) He told him that as his mother will be ill, he had to leave at once.
- (3) He told him that as his mother is ill, he should to leave at once
- (4) He told him that as his mother is ill, he may leave at once.
365. 'Please, Please don't do anything dangerous', said his wife.
- (1) His wife asked him please not to do anything dangerous.
- (2) His wife asked him if he could not do anything dangerous.
- (3) His wife begged him not to do anything dangerous.
- (4) His wife begged him so that he did not do anything dangerous.
366. 'I usually take my dog out for a walk when I come home from work', he said.
- (1) He said that he used to take his dog out for a walk when he came home from work.
- (2) He said that he usually took his dog out for a walk when he had come home from work.
- (3) He said that he usually takes his dog out for a work when he comes home from work.
- (4) He said that he usually took his dog out for a walk when he came home from work.
367. "Do you know the way to the bus station?" Ram said to Mahim.
- (1) Ram told Mahim that he knew the way to the bus station.
- (2) Ram asked Mahim whether he knows the way to the bus station.
- (3) Ram asked Mahim that did he know the way to the bus station.
- (4) Ram asked Mahim if he knew the way to the bus station.
368. "Are your examinations over?" asked the teacher.
- (1) The teacher asked whether his examinations were over.
- (2) The teacher asked are his examinations over.
- (3) The teacher asked him that were his examinations over.
- (4) The teacher said him that were his examinations over.
369. Next morning at breakfast Ramesh's wife said to him "Ramesh, I think I can tell what is amiss with our clock."
- (1) Next morning Ramesh's wife told him that she thought that she could tell what was amiss with their clock.
- (2) Next morning at breakfast Ramesh's wife said that she could tell him what was amiss with our clock.

(3) Next morning at breakfast Ramesh's wife said that she could tell him what was amiss with their clock.

(4) Next morning at breakfast Ramesh's wife addressed him by name and told him that she thought she could tell what was amiss with their clock.

Directions (370 – 396) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect Speech. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct form.

(SSC CGL Tier-II Exam, 25.10.2015, TF No. 2148789)

370. The teacher said to him, "Do not go out."

- (1) The teacher ordered him to not go out.
- (2) The teacher told him do not go out.
- (3) The teacher advised him not to go out.
- (4) The teacher commanded him that he should not go out.

371. Rajiv said to me, "He plays with right hand."

- (1) Rajiv said that he played with right hand.
- (2) Rajiv told me that he could play with right hand.
- (3) Rajiv told me that he plays with right hand
- (4) Rajiv asked if he could play with right hand.

372. "Sam, will you help me carry my bags ?" asked the old woman.

- (1) The old woman asked to Sam to help her carry her bags.
- (2) The old woman told Sam to helped her carry her bags.
- (3) The old woman said to sam to help her carried her bags.
- (4) The old woman asked Sam whether he would help her carry her bags.

373. My father said to me, "Will you sit and study at least now."

- (1) My father asked me if I will sit and study at least then.
- (2) My father asked me whether I can sit and study at least then.

(3) My father enquired me if I would sit and study at least now.

(4) My father asked me if I would sit and study at least then.

374. I said to my mother, "Please warm this milk. Don't boil it."

- (1) I asked my mother that she may warm that milk but not boil it.
- (2) I told my mother respectfully that she will warm that mik and not to boil it.
- (3) I requested my mother that she warm that milk and not to boil it.
- (4) I requested my mother to warm that milk and asked her not boil it.

375. The boy thanked the Principal for granting him a fee-concession.

- (1) The boy said to the Principal, "I express my thanks that you have granted me a fee-concession."
- (2) The boy said to the Principal, "I am thankful to you for a fee-concession."
- (3) The boy told the Principal, "You are kind enough to grant me a fee-concession."
- (4) The boy said to the Principal, "Thank you, madam for granting me a fee-concession."

376. "They are late," she has already told us.

- (1) She told us that they are late already.
- (2) She told us that they are already late.
- (3) She has already told us (that) they are late.
- (4) She has already been telling us that they are late.

377. I'll say to my friends, "I have started learning computer."

- (1) I'll tell my friends that I have started learning computer.
- (2) I'll tell my friends that I am learning computer.
- (3) I'll tell my friends that I had started learning computer.
- (4) I'll tell my friends that I learn computer.

378. He said to me, "Where are you going ?"

- (1) He asked that where I was going.

(2) He asked me where I was going.

(3) He said me to where I was going.

(4) He said to me that where I was going.

379. The teacher said to his student, "Do you have any excuse for coming late to school, today?"

- (1) The teacher asked his student whether he had any excuse for coming late to the school that day.
- (2) The teacher asked his student whether he did have any excuse for coming late to the school that day.
- (3) The teacher asked his student whether he has any excuse for coming late to the school that day.
- (4) The teacher asked his student whether did he have any excuse for coming late to the school that day.

380. The commander said, "Let the gates be left open."

- (1) The commander ordered that let the gates be left open.
- (2) The commander ordered for the gates to be left open.
- (3) The commander ordered that the gates will be left open.
- (4) The commander wanted that the gates be left open.

381. Vipul said, "Alas ! How thoughtless I have been !"

- (1) Vipul confessed with regret that he had been thoughtless.
- (2) Vipul exclaimed how thoughtless I have been.
- (3) Vipul regretted upon my thoughtlessness.
- (4) Vipul admitted that he had been thoughtless.

382. The officer said, "Cowards ! you shall soon be put to death."

- (1) The officer called them cowards and said that they must be put to death soon.
- (2) The officer called them cowards and said that they would soon be put to death.
- (3) The officer said that they were cowards and should be put to death soon.
- (4) The officer said that they would soon be put to death.

383. The teacher said, "Don't come to school on Monday because it is a holiday."
 (1) The teacher asked if we were coming to school on Monday because it is a holiday
 (2) The teacher told us not to come to school on Monday because it is a holiday.
 (3) The teacher told us don't come to school on Monday because it is a holiday.
 (4) The teacher asked us don't come to school on Monday because it is a holiday.
384. Rahul said, "Yes I am mistaken."
 (1) Rahul said that he was on mistake.
 (2) Rahul admitted that he was mistaken.
 (3) Rahul said that he is mistaken.
 (4) Rahul admitted that I was mistaken.
385. He asked me if I would like to have lunch with him that day.
 (1) He said to me, "Do you like to have lunch with me today?"
 (2) He said to me, "You can if you like to have lunch with me today."
 (3) He said to me, "Would you like to have lunch with me today?"
 (4) He said to me, "Can you have lunch with me today?"
386. I said, "Good bye, my beloved friends."
 (1) I bade my beloved friends good bye.
 (2) I bided good bye to my beloved friends.
 (3) I said good bye to my beloved friends.
 (4) I wished my beloved friends good bye.
387. The teacher said to me, "I hope you will bring credit to my school."
 (1) The teacher wished that I would bring credit to my school.
 (2) The teacher said that I will bring credit to his school.
 (3) The teacher desired that I bring credit to his school.
 (4) The teacher hoped that I would bring credit to his school.
388. They said, "We were living in Paris."
 (1) They said they would have lived in Paris.
 (2) They said they might have been living in Paris.
 (3) They told me they had lived in Paris.
 (4) They told me that they had been living in Paris.
389. He said to his father, "Shall I go to market now ?"
 (1) He asked his father if he should go to market then.
 (2) He asked his father if he shall go to market now.
 (3) He asked his father if he would go to market now.
 (4) He asked his father if he will go to market then.
390. I said to my friend, "Can I borrow your dictionary for one day only?"
 (1) I asked my friend if I might borrow his dictionary for one day only.
 (2) I asked my friend if I could borrow his dictionary for one day only.
 (3) I requested my friend if I can borrow his dictionary for one day only.
 (4) I told my friend I could borrow his dictionary for one day only.
391. The guide said to the swimmer, "Don't swim out too far."
 (1) The guide asked the swimmer from swimming out too far.
 (2) The guide forbade the swimmer from swimming out too far.
 (3) The guide suggested the swimmer that don't swim out too far.
 (4) The guide told the swimmer to not swim out too far.
392. Dr. Ratan said to the patient, "Take light food and do not go out in the Sun."
 (1) Dr. Ratan advised the patient to take light food and to do not go out in the Sun.
 (2) Dr. Ratan advised the patient to take light food and do not go out in the Sun.
- (3) Dr. Ratan advised the patient to take light food and not go out in the Sun.
 (4) Dr. Ratan advised the patient to take light food and not to go out in the Sun.
393. "There is no need for you to be so angry !" said Mrs. Sen to her husband.
 (1) Mrs. Sen told her husband to not be so angry.
 (2) Mrs. Sen told her husband that no need was there to be so in anger.
 (3) Mrs. Sen told to her husband that there was no need for his anger.
 (4) Mrs. Sen told her husband that there was no need for him to be so angry.
394. "What an excellent piece of art!" she said.
 (1) She exclaimed with appreciation that it was an excellent piece of art.
 (2) She had exclaimed that it was an excellent piece of art.
 (3) She exclaimed what an excellent piece of art was it.
 (4) She exclaimed with surprise was it an excellent piece of art.
395. "Oh! how foolish I have been in money matters !"
 (1) He confessed regretfully that he had been very foolish in money matters.
 (2) He confessed to himself that he is being very foolish in money matters.
 (3) He exclaimed regretfully that he was very foolish in money matters.
 (4) He expressed with regret that he could be so foolish in money matters.
396. He wished me respectfully and told that he had come to join the office.
 (1) He said to me, "Good morning, Sir ! I have come to join the office."
 (2) He said to me, "Good morning Sir ! I'll join the office today."
 (3) He said, "Good morning Sir ! I want to join the office."
 (4) He said to me, "Good morning, Sir ! I'm here to join the office."

Directions (397–398) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Direct/Indirect.

(SSC CHSL (10+2) LDC, DEO & PA/SA Exam, 01.11.2015, IIInd Sitting)

397. My brother told me that he would buy me a notepad the next day.

- (1) My brother "I am going to buy you a notepad tomorrow."
- (2) My brother said to me, "I would buy you a notepad tomorrow."
- (3) My brother said to me, "I shall buy you a notepad tomorrow."
- (4) My brother said to me, "I will be buying you a notepad tomorrow."

398. The peon said to his officer, "Please forgive me."

- (1) The peon told his officer please forgive him.
- (2) The peon requested his officer to forgive him.
- (3) The peon said to his officer that he should forgive him.
- (4) The peon requested his officer that he forgive him.

Directions (399 – 400) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct.

(SSC CHSL (10+2) LDC, DEO & PA/SA Exam, 15.11.2015 (Ist Sitting) TF No. 6636838)

399. The teacher said, "The Earth moves round the Sun".

- (1) The teacher told that the Earth has moved round the Sun.
- (2) The teacher said that the Earth moves round the Sun.
- (3) The teacher asked that the Earth moves round the Sun.
- (4) The teacher told that the Earth moved round the Sun.

400. Ashok said to me, "Your parents are waiting for you."

- (1) Ashok told me that his parents are waiting for him.
- (2) Ashok told me that my parents were waiting for me.

(3) Ashok told to me that my parents were waiting for me.

(4) Ashok told me that his parents were waiting for him.

Directions (401– 402) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct.

(SSC CHSL (10+2) LDC, DEO & PA/SA Exam, 15.11.2015 (IIInd Sitting) TF No. 7203752)

401. The Policeman said to the driver, "Do you have a licence?"

- (1) The Policeman asked the driver whether he have a licence.
- (2) The Policeman asked the driver whether he had a licence.
- (3) The Policeman asked the driver whether he had had a licence.
- (4) The Policeman asked the driver whether he has a licence.

402. The teacher said to the students, "March quietly to the ground."

- (1) The teacher said to the students that they should march quietly to the ground.
- (2) The teacher instructed the students that they should march quietly to the ground.
- (3) The teacher instructed the students that they must march quietly to the ground.
- (4) The teacher instructed the students to march quietly to the ground.

Directions (403 – 404) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Direct/Indirect.

(SSC CHSL (10+2) LDC, DEO & PA/SA Exam, 06.12.2015 (Ist Sitting) TF No. 1375232)

403. The men said, "We are going to fly kites."

- (1) The men said that we were going to fly kites.
- (2) The men said that we are going to fly kites.
- (3) The men said that they are going to fly kites.
- (4) The men said that they were going to fly kites.

404. Kumar says, "It doesn't rain in January."

(1) Kumar says that it doesn't rain in January.

(2) Kumar says that it didn't rain in January.

(3) Kumar said that it doesn't rain in January.

(4) Kumar said that it didn't rain in January.

Directions (405–406) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct.

(SSC CHSL (10+2) LDC, DEO & PA/SA Exam, 06.12.2015 (IIInd Sitting) TF No. 3441135)

405. Meera's mother told her not to forget to buy the milk.

- (1) Meera's mother said "Remember to buy the milk."
- (2) Meera was told by her mother "Buy the milk."
- (3) Meera's mother reminded her, "Don't forget to buy the milk."
- (4) Meera's mother said to her, "You must buy the milk."

406. I said to him, "Do you definitely need the suit following week?"

- (1) I asked him if he needed the suit the next week.
- (2) I asked him if he definitely needed the suit the following week.
- (3) I asked him if he definitely need the suit the following week.
- (4) I asked him if definitely he needed the suit the next week.

Directions (407 – 408) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct.

(SSC CHSL (10+2) LDC, DEO & PA/SA Exam, 20.12.2015 (Ist Sitting) TF No. 9692918)

407. Ravi asked me, "Have you seen the Taj Mahal?"

- (1) Ravi asked me if I have seen the Taj Mahal.
- (2) Ravi asked me did I see the Taj Mahal.
- (3) Ravi asked me if I had seen the Taj Mahal.
- (4) Ravi asked me if I saw the Taj Mahal.

408. Robin said, "Hurrah ! I have topped again."

- (1) Robin exclaimed joyfully that he had been topped again.
- (2) Robin exclaimed joyfully that he had topped again.
- (3) Robin exclaimed joyfully that he would have topped again.
- (4) Robin exclaimed joyfully that he has topped again.

Directions (409–418) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct.

(SSC (10+2) Stenographer Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 31.01.2016
TF No. 3513283)

409. He said, "I have been studying in this college for two years."

- (1) He said he studied in that college for two years.
- (2) He said he had studied in that college for two years.
- (3) He said for two years he studied in that college.
- (4) He said that he had been studying in that college for two years.

410. Mary said to Simon, "Sharon and Peter are getting engaged next month,"

- (1) Mary told Simon that Sharon and Peter will be getting engaged next month.
- (2) Mary told Simon that Sharon and Peter was getting engaged next month.
- (3) Mary told Simon that Sharon and Peter were getting engaged next month.
- (4) Mary told Simon that Sharon and Peter are getting engaged next month.

411. I said to my friend, "Can you pick me up after work ?"

- (1) I told my friend to pick me up after work.
- (2) I told my friend if I could pick him up after work.
- (3) I asked my friend if he can pick me up after work.
- (4) I asked my friend if he could pick me up after work.

412. Suman said to me, "Did you enjoy the Olympic Games in London ?"

- (1) Suman asked me if I enjoyed the Olympic Games in London.
- (2) Suman asked me if I was enjoyed the Olympic Games in London.
- (3) Suman asked me if I had enjoyed the Olympic Games in London,
- (4) Suman asked me did I enjoy the Olympic Games in London.

413. My friend told me, "This is not a good book to read."

- (1) My friend told me that that was not a good book to read.
- (2) My friend told me that that is not a good book to read.
- (3) My friend told me that that will not be a good book to read.
- (4) My friend told me that this was not a good book to read.

414. Dhanya complained, "I am losing weight steadily."

- (1) Dhanya complains that she is losing weight steadily.
- (2) Dhanya complained that she is losing weight steadily.
- (3) Dhanya complains that she was losing weight steadily.
- (4) Dhanya complained that she was losing weight steadily.

415. My mother said, "You have been sleeping for twelve hours."

- (1) My mother said that I have been sleeping for twelve hours.
- (2) My mother said that I was sleeping for twelve hours.
- (3) My mother said that I had been sleeping for twelve hours.
- (4) My mother said that she had been sleeping for twelve hours.

416. Rajan said to Urvashi, "I'm going to Kashmir tomorrow."

- (1) Rajan told to Urvashi he was going to Kashmir the next day.
- (2) Rajan told Urvashi that he was going to Kashmir the next day.
- (3) Rajan said Urvashi I am going to Kashmir tomorrow.
- (4) Rajan said to Urvashi that he was going to Kashmir tomorrow.

417. She said to me, "Have you finished your work?"

- (1) She asked me if I had finished my work.
- (2) She asked me if I have finished my work.
- (3) She asked me if she had finished my work.
- (4) She asked me if she had finished her work.

418. "Turn around," he told her.

- (1) He told her turn around.
- (2) He asked her to turn around.
- (3) He asked to her to turn around.
- (4) He asked turn around.

Directions (419–428) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct.

(SSC (10+2) Stenographer Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 31.01.2016
TF No. 3513283)

419. He said, "I have been studying in this college for two years."

- (1) He said he studied in that college for two years.
- (2) He said he had studied in that college for two years.
- (3) He said for two years he studied in that college.
- (4) He said that he had been studying in that college for two years.

420. Mary said to Simon, "Sharon and Peter are getting engaged next month,"

- (1) Mary told Simon that Sharon and Peter will be getting engaged next month.
- (2) Mary told Simon that Sharon and Peter was getting engaged next month.
- (3) Mary told Simon that Sharon and Peter were getting engaged the following month.
- (4) Mary told Simon that Sharon and Peter are getting engaged next month.

421. I said to my friend, "Can you pick me up after work ?"

- (1) I told my friend to pick me up after work.
- (2) I told my friend if I could pick him up after work.
- (3) I asked my friend if he can pick me up after work.
- (4) I asked my friend if he could pick me up after work.

422. Suman said to me, "Did you enjoy the Olympic Games in London?"
- (1) Suman asked me if I enjoyed the Olympic Games in London.
 - (2) Suman asked me if I was enjoyed the Olympic Games in London.
 - (3) Suman asked me if I had enjoyed the Olympic Games in London,
 - (4) Suman asked me did I enjoy the Olympic Games in London.
423. My friend told me, "This is not a good book to read."
- (1) My friend told me that that was not a good book to read.
 - (2) My friend told me that that is not a good book to read.
 - (3) My friend told me that that will not be a good book to read.
 - (4) My friend told me that this was not a good book to read.
424. Dhanya complained, "I am losing weight steadily."
- (1) Dhanya complains that she is losing weight steadily.
 - (2) Dhanya complained that she is losing weight steadily.
 - (3) Dhanya complains that she was losing weight steadily.
 - (4) Dhanya complained that she was losing weight steadily.
425. My mother said, "You have been sleeping for twelve hours."
- (1) My mother said that I have been sleeping for twelve hours.
 - (2) My mother said that I was sleeping for twelve hours.
 - (3) My mother said that I had been sleeping for twelve hours.
 - (4) My mother said that she had been sleeping for twelve hours.
426. Rajan said to Urvashi, "I'm going to Kashmir tomorrow."
- (1) Rajan told to Urvashi he was going to Kashmir the next day.
 - (2) Rajan told Urvashi that he was going to Kashmir the next day.
 - (3) Rajan said Urvashi I am going to Kashmir tomorrow.

- (4) Rajan said to Urvashi that he was going to Kashmir tomorrow.
427. She said to me, "Have you finished your work?"
- (1) She asked me if I had finished my work.
 - (2) She asked me if I have finished my work.
 - (3) She asked me if she had finished my work.
 - (4) She asked me if she had finished her work.
428. "Turn around," he told her.
- (1) He told her turn around.
 - (2) He asked her to turn around.
 - (3) He asked to her to turn around.
 - (4) He asked turn around.
- Directions (429-438) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct.
- (SSC (10+2) Stenographer Grade 'C' & 'D' Exam. 31.07.2016)
429. I asked him whether he had not promised to come.
- (1) I said to him, "Did you not promise to come?"
 - (2) I said to him, "Do you not promise to come?"
 - (3) I said, "Did I ask you, not to come?"
 - (4) I asked him, "Did you come? You promise."
430. Rahul said, "What have you been searching for all these hours?"
- (1) Rahul asked me what I had been searching for all those hours.
 - (2) Rahul asked what I have been searching for all those hours.
 - (3) Rahul said that what you had been searching for all these hours.
 - (4) Rahul asked me what I was searching for all these days.
431. He said to the children, "Come to the park with me."
- (1) He invited the children to come to the park with him.
 - (2) I invited the children to come to the park with me.
 - (3) I invited the children to come to the park with us.
 - (4) He invited the children to come to the park with me.

432. "I love chocolate," said Angelina.
- (1) Angelina said that she loved chocolate.
 - (2) Angelina said she loves chocolate.
 - (3) Angelina says she loved chocolate.
 - (4) Angelina said that she loves chocolate.
433. "Do you know that man?" Ravi asked his friend.
- (1) Ravi ask his friend if he knows that man.
 - (2) Ravi asked his friend whether he knew that man.
 - (3) Ravi asked his friend whether he knows that man.
 - (4) Ravi asked his friend he knew or not that man.
434. The teacher said, "Be quiet and listen to my words."
- (1) The students were told be quiet and listen to her words.
 - (2) The teacher asked the students to be quiet and listen to her words.
 - (3) The teacher shouted students listen to my words and be quiet.
 - (4) The teacher said to stop talking and listen to her words.
435. He said that the book was very interesting.
- (1) He said, "This book has been very interesting."
 - (2) He said, "This book had been very interesting."
 - (3) He said, "This book would be very interesting."
 - (4) He said, "This book is very interesting."
436. She said to him, "I have bought a new car."
- (1) She told him that a new car has been bought by her.
 - (2) She told him that she had bought a new car.
 - (3) She told him that she has bought a new car.
 - (4) She told him that she would buy a new car.
437. He said to me, "You are late."
- (1) He said to me that I was late.
 - (2) He told me that I was late.
 - (3) He told me that you were late.
 - (4) He said to me that you were late.

438. I said to him, "You are wrong."
 (1) I told him that he was wrong.
 (2) I said that he was wrong.
 (3) I told him that he is wrong.
 (4) I told him how wrong he was.

Directions (439-465) : In each of the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect Speech. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct Speech.

(SSC CGL Tier-II (CBE)
 Exam. 30.11.2016)

439. He said that she was coming that year.
 (1) He said, "She will come this year."
 (2) He said, "She is coming this year."
 (3) He said, "Come this year."
 (4) He said, "She was coming that year."
440. My mother says, "I have often told you not to play with fire."
 (1) My mother has often told me not to play with fire.
 (2) My mother said that I should not play with fire.
 (3) My mother says that she has often told me not to play with fire.
 (4) My mother says that she often tells me not to play with fire.
441. The teacher said to the student, "Why were you absent yesterday?"
 (1) The teacher asked the student why had been he absent the previous day.
 (2) The teacher asked the student why had he been absent the previous day.
 (3) The teacher informed the student that why he had been absent the next day.
 (4) The teacher asked the student why he had been absent the previous day.
442. My sister said, "They will contact you as soon as they finish the job."
 (1) My sisters said that they would contact me as soon as they would finish the job.
 (2) My sister said that they would contact me as soon as they finish the job.

- (3) My sister said that they would contact me as soon as they will finish the job.
 (4) My sister told to me that they would contact me as soon as they would finish the job.
443. Sheela reassured me, "I can come tonight."
 (1) Sheela told me I could come that night.
 (2) Sheela told me that she could come that night.
 (3) Sheela told me she could come tomorrow evening.
 (4) Sheela told me she could will come that night.
444. I said to you, "I can not be blamed for this."
 (1) I told you that you could not be blamed for that.
 (2) I told you that I could not be blamed for that.
 (3) I said you that I can not be blamed for this.
 (4) I said to you that I can not be blamed for this.
445. The father said to the son, "Why do you not start preparing for the examination this month?"
 (1) The father asked the son that why did he not start preparing for the examination this month?
 (2) The father told the son why he did not prepare for the examination that month.
 (3) The father enquired of the son why he did not start preparing for the examination this month.
 (4) The father asked the son why he did not start preparing for the examination that month.
446. He said, "How can a Zebra talk?"
 (1) He wondered how a Zebra talks.
 (2) He questioned a Zebra talking.
 (3) He asked how a Zebra could talk.
 (4) He was amazed how a Zebra can talk.
447. "What did you eat last night?" asked my mother.
 (1) My mother said to me what did I eat last night.
 (2) My mother asked me what I had eaten the previous night.

- (3) My mother said what did you eat last night.
 (4) My mother questioned me what I ate last night.
448. He asks which chair he is to sit on.
 (1) He said, "Which chair am I to sit on?"
 (2) He asked, "Which chair he is to sit on?"
 (3) "Which chair am I to sit on?" asks he.
 (4) He said, "Which chair should I sit on?"
449. The boss said, "Please give me the latest reports."
 (1) The boss said to please give the latest reports.
 (2) The boss wanted to please the latest reports.
 (3) The boss wanted the latest reports, please.
 (4) The boss requested for the latest reports.
450. They said to me, "Bring these books upstairs."
 (1) They ordered me to bring those books upstairs.
 (2) They implored me to take those books upstairs.
 (3) They suggested me to take those books upstairs.
 (4) They asked me bring the books upstairs.
451. She said, "I've been in this school since 1998."
 (1) She said that she had been in that school since 1998.
 (2) She said that she have been in this school since 1998.
 (3) She said that she was in this school since 1998.
 (4) She said that she was being in that school since 1998.
452. "Are you the same person I met in the park?" I asked.
 (1) I asked the stranger if he was the same person I had met in the park.
 (2) Was he the same person I met in the park I asked the stranger.
 (3) I asked the stranger if I was the same person he had met in the park.
 (4) I asked the stranger if he was the same person I met in the park.

453. He exclaimed with regret that he was perished by the people he had made.
- (1) He said, "Alas! I perished by the people I made."
 - (2) He said, "Alas! I have perished by the people I have made."
 - (3) He said, "Alas! I am perished by the people I have made."
 - (4) He said, "Alas! I am perished by the people I made"
454. "I always keep a tin of biscuits in my room, girls."
- (1) The matron said that she always keeps a tin of biscuits in her room.
 - (2) The matron informed the girls that she always kept a tin of biscuits in her room.
 - (3) The matron told the girls that she would always keep a tin of biscuits in her room.
 - (4) The matron told the girls that she had kept a tin of biscuits in her room.
455. Mother said, "Don't step out of the house in the summer season."
- (1) The mother requested the children not to step out in the summer season.
 - (2) The mother threatened the children not to step out of the house in the summer season.
 - (3) The mother persuaded the children not to step out of the house in the summer season.
 - (4) The mother advised the children not to step out of the house in the summer season.
456. The teacher said that the burglar had broken into the office.
- (1) The teacher said, "The burglar had broken into the office."
 - (2) The teacher said, "The burglar break into the office."
 - (3) The teacher said, "The burglar broken into the office."
 - (4) The teacher said, "The burglar was broken in the office."
457. Salim told Ajay that he would return the book to him the next day.
- (1) "I will return this book to you the next day," said Salim.
 - (2) Salim said, "I will be returning the book to you tomorrow, Ajay."

- (3) "Ajay, I will return the book to you tomorrow," said Salim.
 - (4) "Ajay will return this book to you tomorrow," said Salim.
458. "I can't stand on my head because I am not well."
- (1) He said that he couldn't stand on his head because he was not well.
 - (2) He said that he can't stand on his head because he was not well.
 - (3) He told that he couldn't stand on his head because he was not well.
 - (4) He declared that he couldn't stand on his head because he was not well.
459. He said that when he was a boy he could stay up as long as he liked.
- (1) He said, "When I had been a boy I could stay up as long as I liked."
 - (2) He told, "When I was a boy I could stay up as long as I liked."
 - (3) He said, "When I was a boy I could stay up as long as I liked."
 - (4) He said, "When I am a boy I can stay up as long as I like."
460. He explained that he knew the place well because he used to live there.
- (1) "I know the place well because I use to live here," he explained.
 - (2) "I know the place well because I used to live here," he explained.
 - (3) "I knew the place because I used to live here," he explained.
 - (4) "I have known the place well because I used to live here," he explained.
461. She said, "We were thinking of selling the house but we had decided not to".
- (1) She said that they were thinking of selling the house but they decided not to.
 - (2) She said that they thought of selling the house but decided not to.
 - (3) She said that they have been thinking of selling the house but decided not to.

- (4) She said that they had been thinking of selling the house but had decided not to.
462. The guide suggested, "Let's rest here for a while."
- (1) The guide suggested that we should rest there for a while.
 - (2) The guide suggested that we rest there.
 - (3) The guide suggested we should rest for a while.
 - (4) The guide suggested resting for a while there.
463. "Good-bye! Dear friend," said the patriot, "we will meet again."
- (1) The patriot said good-bye to his dear friend and said that they will meet again.
 - (2) The patriot bade his friend good-bye and said that they must meet again.
 - (3) Bidding his dear friend goodbye, the patriot said that they would meet again.
 - (4) The patriot said goodbye to his friend and said that they are sure to meet again.
464. He told his mother that he was starting in two days' time.
- (1) "I am starting the day after tomorrow, mother," he said.
 - (2) "I will start the next day, mother," he said.
 - (3) "I may start in two days time, mother," he said.
 - (4) "I must start in two days time mother," he said.
465. He told me, "Your train will leave if you do not go at once."
- (1) He told me that his train will leave if he did not go at once.
 - (2) He told me that my train will leave if I do not go at that moment.
 - (3) He told me that his train would leave if he did not go that moment.
 - (4) He told me that my train would leave if I did not go that moment.

Directions (466–492) : In each of the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/ Indirect Speech. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one that best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct Speech.

(SSC CGL Tier-II (CBE)
Exam. 01.12.2016)

466. Rakesh says, "Can you prepare a cup of tea for me, Sunita?"

- (1) Rakesh tells Sunita to prepare a cup of tea for him.
- (2) Rakesh tells Sunita if she could prepare a cup of tea for him.
- (3) Rakesh asked Sunita if she can prepare a cup of tea for him.
- (4) Rakesh asks Sunita if she can prepare a cup of tea for him.

467. The Prime Minister said at a meeting, "There is no need of a working President for the party now."

- (1) The Prime Minister told a meeting that there was no need of a working President for the party now.
- (2) The Prime Minister said at a meeting that there was no need of a working President for the party then.
- (3) The Prime Minister told a meeting that there was no need of a working President then.
- (4) The Prime Minister addressed a meeting that there was no need of a working President for the party then.

468. He said, "Be quiet and listen to my words".

- (1) He asked to be quiet and listen to his words.
- (2) He urged them to be quiet and listen to his words.
- (3) He said to them be quiet and listen to his words.
- (4) He told to listen to his words and be quiet.

469. Anil said, "Ali deserved the prize."

- (1) Anil says that Ali deserves the prize.
- (2) Anil said that Ali deserves the prize.
- (3) Anil said that Ali has deserved the prize.
- (4) Anil said that Ali had deserved the prize.

470. He said to me, "May god bless you".

- (1) He prayed so I would be blessed.
- (2) He prayed so that God will bless me.

(3) He prays because I need blessing.

(4) He prayed that God might bless me.

471. I said to the old man, "Don't sit on that chair, it is broken."

- (1) I cautioned the old man against sitting on that chair as it was broken.
- (2) I cautioned the old man against sitting on that chair, it was broken.
- (3) I requested the old man not to sit on that chair because it is broken.
- (4) I asked the old man not to sit on the chair as it is broken.

472. "Well, well," He said. "A strange man!"

- (1) A strange man said well well.
- (2) He said that well is a strange man.
- (3) He observed that he was a strange man.
- (4) He commented that the strange man was well.

473. He said, "I am coming tomorrow".

- (1) He told that he was coming tomorrow.
- (2) He said that he was coming tomorrow.
- (3) He told he come the next day.
- (4) He said that he was coming the next day

474. He says, "The sun rises in the east".

- (1) He said that the sun rose in the east.
- (2) He says that the sun has risen in the east.
- (3) He says that the sun rises in the east.
- (4) He said that the sun rises in the east.

475. He said, "How I wish they would come!"

- (1) He exclaimed that he wished they would come.
- (2) He exclaimed hopefully that they would come.
- (3) He exclaimed that he would wish them to come.
- (4) He exclaimed how he wished they would come.

476. The teacher said to the children, "The Sun always sets in the west".

(1) The teacher told the children that the Sun always sets in the west.

(2) The teacher told that the Sun always sets in the west.

(3) The teacher asked the children if the Sun sets in the west.

(4) The teacher told the children that the Sun set in the west.

477. The stranger said to the boy, "Can you tell me the way to Raj Bhawan?"

- (1) The stranger said to the boy to point Raj Bhawan to him.
- (2) The stranger requested the boy to take him to Raj Bhawan.
- (3) The stranger requested the boy to show him Raj Bhawan.
- (4) The stranger asked the boy if he could tell him the way to Raj Bhawan.

478. The teacher asked the students, "Did the guide bring you right upto the top?"

- (1) The teacher enquired from the students whether the guide had conducted them right upto the top.
- (2) The teacher wanted to know whether the guide climbed with them right upto the top.
- (3) The teacher sought information from the students whether the guide brought them right upto the top.
- (4) The teacher asked the students whether the guide took them right upto the top.

479. "By God! I have not cheated," said the boy.

- (1) The boy said he will not cheat.
- (2) The boy exclaimed by God of not cheating.
- (3) In the name of God I have not cheated.
- (4) The boy swore that he had not cheated.

480. "Why don't you see a doctor?" said Mrs. Lal to Nina.

- (1) Mrs. Lal asked Nina why she couldn't see a doctor.
- (2) Mrs. Lal demanded why Nina didn't see her doctor.
- (3) Mrs. Lal advised Nina to see a doctor.
- (4) Mrs. Lal advised that Nina to see her doctor.

481. She said, "My sister was here ten days ago, but she is not here now".
- (1) She said that her sister was here ten days ago, but she was not there then.
 - (2) She said that her sister had been there ten days before but she was not there then.
 - (3) She told that her sister had been there ten days before, but she has not been there then.
 - (4) She informed that her sister was there ten days before but she was not there then.
482. He said, "Let it rain ever so hard, I shall go".
- (1) He said that he would go however hard it might rain.
 - (2) He said that he would go ever if it rains very hard.
 - (3) He suggested that he should go, let it rain very hard.
 - (4) He was determined to go even if it rained so hard.
483. "Who are you? Where have you come from?" said the little boy to him.
- (1) The little boy exclaimed who he was and asked where he had come from.
 - (2) The little boy asked him who he was and that where he had come from.
 - (3) The little boy enquired of him who he was and where he come from.
 - (4) The little boy enquired of him who he was and where he had come from.
484. The teacher said to his students, "Health is wealth, whatever you may say".
- (1) The teacher told his students that health was wealth, whatever they might say.
 - (2) The teacher exclaimed to his students that health is wealth whatever they might tell.
 - (3) The teacher assured his students that health was weath whatever they might say.
 - (4) The teacher told his students that health is wealth whatever they might say.
485. The child said, "What a beautiful sight!"
- (1) The child said that it was to be a beautiful sight.

- (2) The child exclaimed that it was a beautiful sight.
 - (3) The child said that it had been a beautiful sight.
 - (4) The child exclaimed that it has to be a beautiful sight.
486. Mohan will say, "I want two persons to assist me."
- (1) Mohan will say that he will want two persons to assist him.
 - (2) Mohan says that he will want two persons to assist him.
 - (3) Mohan will say that two persons want to assist him.
 - (4) Mohan will say that he wants two persons to assist him.
487. He said, "Why did you give up your job?"
- (1) He asked her why she had given up her job.
 - (2) He asked her why you gave up the job.
 - (3) He demand to know why she gave up job.
 - (4) He requested her why she gave up the job.
488. She said, "I really wish I had bought that new car".
- (1) She told me she really wished she bought that new car.
 - (2) She told me she really had wished she had bought that new car.
 - (3) She told me she really wished she had bought that new car.
 - (4) She told me she would buy that new car
489. Ram said, "Are you really serious about becoming a pilot, son?"
- (1) Ram asked his son if he was really serious about becoming a pilot.
 - (2) Ram asked his son was he really serious about becoming a pilot.
 - (3) Ram asked his son is he really serious about becoming a pilot.
 - (4) Ram asked to his son if he was really serious about becoming a pilot.
490. Tom said that the burglar had come in through the window.
- (1) Tom said, "The burglar had came in through the window".
 - (2) Tom said, "The burglar must have come in through the window".

- (3) Tom said, "Did the burglar come in through the window".
 - (4) Tom said, "The burglar came in through the window".
491. He glanced at his watch, "And by the way, I must be off".
- (1) He glanced at his watch and remarked that it was rather late and that he must go.
 - (2) He glanced at his watch and quickly went away saying that he must go.
 - (3) He glanced at his watch and remarked that he must leave at once.
 - (4) He glanced at his watch and hurried away.
492. He said, "Sita, when is the next train?"
- (1) He said to Sita when the next train was.
 - (2) He asked Sita when the next train was.
 - (3) He asked Sita about the next train.
 - (4) He asked when the next train is.

Directions (493–519) : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/ Indirect Speech. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one that best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct speech.

(SSC CAPFs SI, ASI Online Exam. 18.12.2016)

493. He said, 'Rogue! You have deceived me.'
- (1) He told him a rogue and said him of having deceived him.
 - (2) He called him a rogue and accused him of having deceived me.
 - (3) He called him a rogue and accused him of having deceived him.
 - (4) He told him a rogue and declared him of having deceived me.
494. He said to him, 'Do not go there.'
- (1) He told him to go there.
 - (2) He told him to not go there.
 - (3) He told him not to go there.
 - (4) He forbade him not to go there.
495. You said to me, 'I warn you of the coming danger.'
- (1) You warned him of the coming danger.

- (2) You told me of the coming danger.
 (3) You advised me of the coming danger.
 (4) You warned me of the coming danger.
496. Rita says that Kishore sang a song.
 (1) Rita says, "Kishore sang a song".
 (2) Rita said, "Kishore sang a song".
 (3) Rita says, "Kishore had sing a song".
 (4) Rita told, "Kishore sang a song".
497. The boy said, 'Alas! My mother had died.'
 (1) The boy exclaimed with sorrow that my mother had died.
 (2) The boy exclaimed with sorrow that his mother had died.
 (3) The boy exclaimed with sorrow that my mother has died.
 (4) The boy exclaimed that his mother had died.
498. The teacher said, 'Let the boy go home.'
 (1) The teacher said that the boy may be allowed to go home
 (2) The teacher said that the boy might be allowed to go home
 (3) The teacher said that the boy can be allowed to go home
 (4) The teacher said that the boy would be allowed to go home
499. I said to him, 'When will you return?'
 (1) I asked him when he will return
 (2) I asked him if when he would return
 (3) I asked when she would return
 (4) I asked him when he would return
500. He said to his servant, 'Go away at once.'
 (1) He ordered his servant to go away at once
 (2) He asked his servant if go away at once
 (3) He asked his servant to go away at once
 (4) He requested his servant to go away at once
501. He said to him, 'Thank you for your kind help.'
 (1) He asked him for his kind help
 (2) He thanked him for his kind help
 (3) He requested him for his kind help
 (4) He told him for his kind help
502. He said, 'Yes, I am at fault.'
 (1) He admitted that he was at fault
 (2) He forbade that he was at fault
 (3) He asked that he is at fault
 (4) He admitted that he is at fault
503. I said to him, 'Look at this picture.'
 (1) I requested him to look at this picture
 (2) I advised him to look at this picture
 (3) I asked him to look at that picture
 (4) I ordered him to look at this picture
504. I said that I knew that man.
 (1) I said, "I knew that man"
 (2) I said, "I know this man"
 (3) I said, "I know that man"
 (4) I asked, "I know this man"
505. The traveller said, 'Can you tell me the way to the railway station?' 'Yes, I can', replied the little boy.
 (1) The traveller asked the little boy whether he could tell him the way to the railway station. The little boy replied that he can.
 (2) The traveller enquired the little boy whether he could tell him the way to the railway station. The little boy replied that he could.
 (3) The traveller enquired the little boy whether I could tell him the way to the railway station. The little boy replied that he might.
 (4) The traveller enquired the little boy whether I could tell me the way to the railway station. The little boy replied that he could.
506. He said, 'Bravo! You have done well.'
- (1) He applauded him saying that he had done well
 (2) He exclaimed him saying that he has done well
 (3) He exclaimed saying him that he has done well
 (4) He applauded him saying that I had done well
507. The speaker said, 'Gentlemen, I am going to discuss the food situation in our country.'
 (1) Addressing them as gentlemen, the speaker said that he is going to discuss the food situation in their country
 (2) Addressing them as gentlemen, the speaker said that he was going to discuss the food situation in their country
 (3) The speaker told the gentlemen that he is going to discuss the food situation in their country
 (4) The speaker told the gentlemen that I was going to discuss the food situation in our country
508. Shanti said, 'Sita has a fine picture.'
 (1) Shanti said that Sita has a fine picture
 (2) Shanti told that Sita would have a fine picture
 (3) Shanti said that Sita had a fine picture
 (4) Shanti said that Sita have a fine picture
509. He said to his friend, 'Please lend me your book.'
 (1) He advised his friend to please lend me his book
 (2) He requested his friend to lend him his book
 (3) He ordered his friend to lend him his book
 (4) He asked his friend to lend him his book
510. Mother said to me, 'Do you know where your sister is?'
 (1) Mother asked me if he whether I knew where my sister was
 (2) Mother asked me whether I knew where my sister was
 (3) Mother asked me if she knew where my sister was
 (4) Mother asked me if I did know where my sister is

511. The accused said to the magistrate, 'Pardon me this time, sir.'

- (1) The accused advised the magistrate to pardon him that time
- (2) The accused told the magistrate to pardon me that time
- (3) The accused ordered the magistrate to pardon him that time
- (4) The accused begged the magistrate to pardon him that time

512. He said to him, 'I assure you I am not at fault.'

- (1) He assured him that he was not at fault
- (2) He assured him that he have not at fault
- (3) He assured him that I was not at fault
- (4) He assured him that he had not at fault

513. She said that she really liked that furniture.

- (1) "She really liked this furniture," she said
- (2) "She had really liked this furniture," she said
- (3) "I really like this furniture," she said
- (4) "I have really liked this furniture," she said

514. He told me that his father had gone to Mumbai the previous week.

- (1) He asked me, "My father had go to Mumbai last week."
- (2) He said to me, "My father went to Mumbai last week."
- (3) He said to me, "My father go to Mumbai last week."
- (4) He told me, "My father went to Mumbai the previous week".

515. She announced that they had selected Pradeep as their leader.

- (1) She said, "Pradeep is our leader."
- (2) She announced, "We have selected Pradeep as our leader."
- (3) She announced, "Let us select Pradeep as our leader."
- (4) She declared, "Pradeep had been selected as our leader."

516. Ram said, 'Honesty is the best policy.'

- (1) Ram told that honesty was the best policy
- (2) Ram said that honesty has been the best policy
- (3) Ram told that honesty has the best policy
- (4) Ram said that honesty is the best policy

517. She said, "Satish sang".

- (1) She said that Satish had sung.
- (2) She said that Satish has sung.
- (3) She said that Satish had been sung.
- (4) She said that Satish has been sung.

518. I said to him, 'When did your school close?'

- (1) I asked him when his school closed
- (2) I asked him when his school was closed
- (3) I asked him if when his school had closed
- (4) I asked him when his school had closed

519. The teacher said, 'What is the matter?'

- (1) The teacher asked what the matter was
- (2) The teacher asked what was the matter
- (3) The teacher asked what the matters had been
- (4) The teacher asked what the matter is

520. In the following question, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect speech. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best express the same sentence in Indirect/Direct speech.

The client said to the ticket-seller, "At what time do the counters close?"

- (1) The client asked the ticket-seller at what time the counters closed.
- (2) The client asked the ticket-seller at what time did the counters always close.
- (3) The client said to the ticket-seller at what time the counters close.
- (4) The client inquired to the ticket-seller at what time the counters usually close.

(SSC CHSL (10+2) Tier-I (CBE) Exam. 15.01.2017 (IInd Sitting))

521. In the following question, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect speech. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one, which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct speech.

The girl in the red dress said to me, "Where is the film studio?"

- (1) The girl in the red dress inquired me, where the film studio is.
- (2) The girl in the red dress asked me, where is the film studio.
- (3) The girl in the red dress asked me where the film studio is.
- (4) The girl in the red dress asked me where the film studio was.

(SSC CHSL (10+2) Tier-I (CBE) Exam. 16.01.2017 (IInd Sitting))

Directions (522-548) : In each of the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect speech. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct speech.

(SSC CGL Tier-II (CBE) Exam. 12.01.2017)

522. They told us that they had waited at the station for a long time.

- (1) They told us, "We waited at the station for a long time".
- (2) They told us, "We had been waiting at the station for a long time".
- (3) They told us, "We are waiting at the station for a long time".
- (4) They told us, "We wait at the station for a long time."

523. The boss said to him, "Please tell me what the old man said today."

- (1) The boss requested him to tell him what the old man had said that day.
- (2) The boss requested him to tell him what the old man had said today.
- (3) The boss requested him to tell him what the old man said that day.
- (4) The boss requested him to tell him what the old man said today.

524. He said, "She had been weeping for an hour."

- (1) He says that she was weeping for an hour.
- (2) He said that she was weeping for an hour.
- (3) He said that she has been weeping for an hour.
- (4) He said that she had been weeping for an hour.

525. The teacher said, "Tell me students, what have you learnt from the lectures this week?"

- (1) The teacher asked the students what they learnt from the lectures that week.
- (2) The teacher asked the students to tell him what they learnt from the lectures that week.
- (3) The teacher wanted to know what the students learnt from the lectures that week.
- (4) The teacher asked the students to tell him what they had learnt from the lectures that week.

526. I said to you, "He should not be trusted."

- (1) I said to you do not trust him.
- (2) I told you that he cannot be trusted.
- (3) I told you he shall not be trusted.
- (4) I told you that he should not be trusted.

527. The clerk said to the visitor, "Shall I ask these people to wait for you?"

- (1) The clerk asked the visitor if he should ask those people to wait for him.
- (2) The clerk asked the visitor if he shall ask these people to wait for him.
- (3) The clerk asked the visitor if he had asked those people to wait for him.
- (4) The clerk told the visitor that he should ask these people to wait for him.

528. Robin said to Peg, "Are you listening? Don't be thick."

- (1) Robin asked Peg if he was listening and advised him not to be thick.
- (2) Robin told Peg to listen to him and not to be thick.

(3) Peg was asked to listen to Robin and not to be thick.

(4) Robin invited Peg to listen and not to be thick.

529. Mother told me that I should listen to her first and then do anything as I pleased.

- (1) Mother said to me, "I should listen to me first and then do anything I please."
- (2) Mother said to me, "He should listen to her first and then do anything he pleases."
- (3) Mother said to me, "You should listen to me first and then do anything I pleased."
- (4) Mother said to me, "You should listen to me first and then do anything as you please."

530. He said, "They will be using my car for the trip."

- (1) He said that they would be using my car for the trip.
- (2) He said that they would be using his car for the trip.
- (3) He said that we will be using his car for the trip.
- (4) He said that they will be using my car for the trip.

531. The wayfarer said to me, "Do you know the way to the Asiad village?"

- (1) The wayfarer asked me if I did know the way to the Asiad village.
- (2) The wayfarer asked me if I knew the way to the Asiad village.
- (3) The wayfarer asked me if he knew the way to the Asiad village.
- (4) The wayfarer asked me that if I knew the way to the Asiad village.

532. He has just said, "My son will be back on Friday."

- (1) He has just said that my son will be back on Friday.
- (2) He has just said that his son will be back on Friday.
- (3) He has just said that his son shall be back on Friday.
- (4) He has just said that his son would have been back next Friday.

533. The doctor advised the patients to give up smoking.

- (1) The doctor said to the patients, "Why don't you give up smoking?"
- (2) The doctor said to the patients, "You should give up smoking."
- (3) The doctor said to the patients, "Give up smoking."
- (4) The doctor said to the patient, "I am advising you to give up smoking."

534. She said to me, "What can I do for you dear?"

- (1) She asked me affectionately what could she do for me.
- (2) She asked me affectionately what she could do for me.
- (3) She asked me affectionately what can she do for me.
- (4) She asked me affectionately if she could do anything for me.

535. The teacher said to the boys, "Can you sit still and do you work?"

- (1) The teacher told the boys whether they could sit still and do their work.
- (2) The teacher asked the boys can't they sit still and do their work.
- (3) The teacher requested the boys to sit still.
- (4) The teacher asked the boys if they could sit still and do their work.

536. Ritu said to you, "You are looking very pretty."

- (1) Ritu told you that you were looking very pretty.
- (2) Ritu told you that I was looking very pretty.
- (3) Ritu told you that she was looking very pretty.
- (4) Ritu told you that you are looking very pretty.

537. He said to me, "Please be kind and help me."

- (1) He requested to me to help him kindly.
- (2) He told me to kindly help him.
- (3) He requested me to be kind to help him.
- (4) He requested me to be kind and help him.

538. He said to Raina, "I cannot marry you now but I shall surely do so next year."
- (1) He told Raina that he cannot marry her now but would surely do so the following year.
 - (2) He told her that he could not marry Raina then but would surely marry her next year.
 - (3) He told Raina that he could not marry her then but he would surely do so the following year.
 - (4) He told Raina that he would not marry her then but would surely do so the next year.
539. He told Pawan that they should have tried harder.
- (1) He said to Pawan, "We should have tried harder."
 - (2) He said, "Pawan you should have tried harder."
 - (3) He said, "Pawan, Don't you think we should have tried harder."
 - (4) He said, "Pawan, we had tried harder."
540. They told me that they had been befooled by those men.
- (1) They said to me, "We were befooled by these men."
 - (2) They said to me, "They had befooled us."
 - (3) They said to me, "We have been befooled by these men."
 - (4) They said to me, "We are befooled by these men."
541. The spectators applauded the young athlete saying that he had broken all previous records.
- (1) The spectators said to the young athlete, "Bravo! You have broken all records."
 - (2) The spectators exclaimed to the young athlete, "You have broken all records."
 - (3) The spectators said to the young athlete, "You broke all records."
 - (4) The spectators said to the young athlete, "You had broken all records."
542. The master asked the people why they prevented him from going near the tiger.
- (1) The master said to the people, "Why do you prevent me from going near the tiger."

- (2) The master asked the people, "Why do they prevent me from going near the tiger?"
 - (3) The master asked the people, "Why are they preventing him from going near the tiger?"
 - (4) The master was asking the people, "Why do you prevent me from going near the tiger?"
543. Mr. Rao told Mr. Mehta that he had to go to the town that day.
- (1) Mr. Rao said, "I have to go to the town today."
 - (2) Mr. Rao said, "Mr. Mehta I have to go to the town that day."
 - (3) Mr. Rao said, "Mr. Mehta, I have to go to the town today."
 - (4) Mr. Rao said, "Mr. Mehta I will have to go to the town today."
544. He said, "Do as you wish, but don't come and ask me for help if you get into difficulties."
- (1) He told me to do as he wished or he wouldn't come and help me if I got into difficulties.
 - (2) He told me to do as I wished, but not to go and ask him for help if I got into difficulties.
 - (3) He ordered me to do as I wished, but not to go and ask him for help if I got into difficulties.
 - (4) He told me that unless I did as I wished he would not come and help me if I got into difficulties.
545. Your father said to me, "I should not have given my daughter such a long rope."
- (1) Your father told me that he had not given his daughter such a long rope.
 - (2) Your father told me that he should not have given his daughter such a long rope.
 - (3) Your father said that he could not have given his daughter such a long rope.
 - (4) Your father told to me that he should not have given his daughter such a long rope.

546. You said, "My parents never liked my accepting any job but I had always wanted to stand on my own feet".
- (1) You regretted that your parents had never liked you accepting any job but you always wanted to stand on your own feet.
 - (2) You said that your parents never liked your accepting any job but you always wanted to stand on your own feet.
 - (3) You told that your parents never like you accepting any job but you always wanted to stand on your own feet.
 - (4) You said that my parents never liked my accepting any job but I had always wanted to stand on my own feet.
547. She says, "I keep at an arm's length, all those who try to flatter me."
- (1) She said that she kept at an arms length all those who try to flatter her.
 - (2) She exclaims that she keeps at an arm's length all of them who try to flatter her.
 - (3) She says that she will keep at an arm's length all those who flatter her.
 - (4) She says that she keeps at an arm's length all those who try to flatter her.
548. He said, "Gandhi ji faced many awkward situations when he was living in South Africa."
- (1) He said that Gandhi ji had faced many awkward situations when he was living in South Africa.
 - (2) He says that Gandhi ji faced many awkward situations when he was living in South Africa.
 - (3) He told that Gandhi ji had faced many awkward situations when he was living in South Africa.
 - (4) He said that Gandhi ji had been facing awkward situations when he was living in South Africa.

ANSWERS

1. (2)	2. (3)	3. (1)	4. (3)
5. (1)	6. (4)	7. (3)	8. (1)
9. (3)	10. (4)	11. (1)	12. (3)
13. (3)	14. (4)	15. (1)	16. (4)
17. (2)	18. (3)	19. (1)	20. (4)
21. (3)	22. (3)	23. (4)	24. (3)
25. (3)	26. (2)	27. (3)	28. (3)
29. (3)	30. (4)	31. (3)	32. (4)
33. (4)	34. (3)	35. (2)	36. (4)
37. (3)	38. (2)	39. (4)	40. (3)
41. (2)	42. (4)	43. (4)	44. (3)
45. (1)	46. (4)	47. (1)	48. (2)
49. (3)	50. (2)	51. (4)	52. (2)
53. (3)	54. (3)	55. (1)	56. (1)
57. (3)	58. (2)	59. (1)	60. (2)
61. (2)	62. (3)	63. (1)	64. (2)
65. (3)	66. (2)	67. (4)	68. (1)
69. (1)	70. (3)	71. (3)	72. (2)
73. (1)	74. (4)	75. (4)	76. (3)
77. (3)	78. (2)	79. (1)	80. (3)
81. (4)	82. (4)	83. (3)	84. (3)
85. (2)	86. (2)	87. (3)	88. (2)
89. (1)	90. (2)	91. (3)	92. (4)
93. (1)	94. (3)	95. (1)	96. (1)
97. (3)	98. (1)	99. (3)	100. (2)
101. (3)	102. (4)	103. (1)	104. (4)
105. (2)	106. (4)	107. (1)	108. (2)
109. (4)	110. (2)	111. (2)	112. (1)
113. (2)	114. (3)	115. (4)	116. (2)
117. (3)	118. (2)	119. (1)	120. (2)
121. (1)	122. (2)	123. (4)	124. (1)
125. (2)	126. (3)	127. (4)	128. (3)
129. (2)	130. (2)	131. (3)	132. (2)
133. (3)	134. (3)	135. (1)	136. (1)
137. (1)	138. (3)	139. (3)	140. (2)
141. (1)	142. (3)	143. (2)	144. (1)
145. (4)	146. (1)	147. (1)	148. (1)
149. (3)	150. (2)	151. (2)	152. (3)
153. (2)	154. (4)	155. (1)	156. (4)
157. (3)	158. (3)	159. (1)	160. (2)
161. (4)	162. (4)	163. (4)	164. (1)
165. (2)	166. (3)	167. (1)	168. (1)
169. (2)	170. (1)	171. (3)	172. (3)
173. (4)	174. (1)	175. (3)	176. (3)
177. (2)	178. (4)	179. (3)	180. (2)

181. (4)	182. (4)	183. (2)	184. (3)
185. (2)	186. (3)	187. (3)	188. (1)
189. (1)	190. (3)	191. (1)	192. (4)
193. (3)	194. (3)	195. (2)	196. (1)
197. (2)	198. (1)	199. (4)	200. (4)
201. (1)	202. (2)	203. (2)	204. (1)
205. (4)	206. (2)	207. (3)	208. (1)
209. (1)	210. (3)	211. (1)	212. (2)
213. (1)	214. (1)	215. (2)	216. (2)
217. (4)	218. (4)	219. (4)	220. (4)
221. (1)	222. (1)	223. (2)	224. (4)
225. (2)	226. (3)	227. (1)	228. (2)
229. (2)	230. (4)	231. (2)	232. (2)
233. (2)	234. (4)	235. (1)	236. (4)
237. (3)	238. (3)	239. (2)	240. (4)
241. (3)	242. (1)	243. (3)	244. (3)
245. (4)	246. (3)	247. (2)	248. (2)
249. (1)	250. (2)	251. (1)	252. (2)
253. (4)	254. (3)	255. (4)	256. (3)
257. (3)	258. (1)	259. (3)	260. (4)
261. (3)	262. (3)	263. (2)	264. (3)
265. (4)	266. (3)	267. (1)	268. (2)
269. (1)	270. (2)	271. (4)	272. (1)
273. (1)	274. (3)	275. (4)	276. (2)
277. (2)	278. (1)	279. (1)	280. (1)
281. (4)	282. (2)	283. (2)	284. (2)
285. (1)	286. (3)	287. (3)	288. (4)
289. (4)	290. (2)	291. (4)	292. (3)
293. (2)	294. (1)	295. (2)	296. (1)
297. (3)	298. (4)	299. (2)	300. (2)
301. (3)	302. (3)	303. (4)	304. (1)
305. (3)	306. (4)	307. (3)	308. (4)
309. (3)	310. (2)	311. (2)	312. (1)
313. (2)	314. (4)	315. (3)	316. (4)
317. (2)	318. (4)	319. (1)	320. (3)
321. (2)	322. (3)	323. (2)	324. (4)
325. (3)	326. (1)	327. (4)	328. (2)
329. (4)	330. (4)	331. (3)	332. (3)
333. (1)	334. (3)	335. (4)	336. (2)
337. (1)	338. (4)	339. (1)	340. (1)
341. (3)	342. (2)	343. (4)	344. (3)
345. (4)	346. (3)	347. (1)	348. (1)
349. (3)	350. (4)	351. (1)	352. (3)
353. (4)	354. (1)	355. (4)	356. (1)
357. (4)	358. (4)	359. (2)	360. (3)
361. (4)	362. (2)	363. (1)	364. (1)
365. (3)	366. (4)	367. (4)	368. (1)

369. (4)	370. (3)	371. (3)	372. (4)
373. (4)	374. (4)	375. (4)	376. (3)
377. (1)	378. (2)	379. (1)	380. (2)
381. (1)	382. (2)	383. (2)	384. (2)
385. (3)	386. (1)	387. (4)	388. (4)
389. (1)	390. (2)	391. (2)	392. (4)
393. (4)	394. (1)	395. (1)	396. (1)
397. (3)	398. (2)	399. (2)	400. (2)
401. (2)	402. (4)	403. (4)	404. (1)
405. (3)	406. (2)	407. (3)	408. (2)
409. (4)	410. (3)	411. (4)	412. (3)
413. (1)	414. (4)	415. (3)	416. (2)
417. (1)	418. (2)	419. (4)	420. (3)
421. (4)	422. (3)	423. (1)	424. (4)
425. (3)	426. (2)	427. (1)	428. (2)
429. (1)	430. (1)	431. (1)	432. (1)
433. (2)	434. (2)	435. (4)	436. (2)
437. (2)	438. (1)	439. (2)	440. (3)
441. (4)	442. (2)	443. (2)	444. (2)
445. (4)	446. (3)	447. (2)	448. (3)
449. (4)	450. (3)	451. (1)	452. (1)
453. (3)	454. (2)	455. (4)	456. (1)
457. (3)	458. (1)	459. (3)	460. (2)
461. (4)	462. (1)	463. (3)	464. (1)
465. (4)	466. (4)	467. (2)	468. (2)
469. (4)	470. (4)	471. (1)	472. (3)
473. (4)	474. (3)	475. (2)	476. (1)
477. (4)	478. (1)	479. (4)	480. (3)
481. (2)	482. (1)	483. (4)	484. (4)
485. (2)	486. (4)	487. (1)	488. (3)
489. (1)	490. (4)	491. (3)	492. (2)
493. (3)	494. (3)	495. (4)	496. (1)
497. (2)	498. (2)	499. (4)	500. (1)
501. (2)	502. (1)	503. (3)	504. (2)
505. (2)	506. (1)	507. (2)	508. (3)
509. (2)	510. (2)	511. (4)	512. (1)
513. (3)	514. (2)	515. (2)	516. (4)
517. (1)	518. (4)	519. (1)	520. (1)
521. (4)	522. (1)	523. (1)	524. (4)
525. (4)	526. (4)	527. (1)	528. (1)
529. (4)	530. (2)	531. (2)	532. (2)
533. (3)	534. (1)	535. (4)	536. (1)
537. (4)	538. (3)	539. (1)	540. (3)
541. (1)	542. (1)	543. (3)	544. (2)
545. (2)	546. (2)	547. (4)	548. (1)

EXPLANATIONS

1. (2) He said, "Ravi, why are you sounding so depressed today?" (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. H.V Pro. Verb Ext. wd.
(Ravi)(Pr.Cont)

He asked Ravi why he was sounding so depressed that day. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Pro. verb Ext. wd.
(You) (P.Cont)

The word order will be Subject/ Pronoun + Verb (he + was sounding)

2. (3) He asked me, "What time will the sun set tomorrow." ? (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Modal Verb Ext. wd.
(Verb)

He asked me what time the sun would set the next day. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Modal verb Ext. wd.
(Verb)

3. (1) "Tinu, where have you been all these days?" asked the Principal. (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Verb Pro. verb Ext. wd. Rep.V.
(Tinu)(Pr.Per)

The Principal asked Tinu where he had been all those days. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Pro. Verb Ext. wd.
(You) (P.Per)

4. (3) "Have you finished your assignment, Minu?" said her brother. (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
(H.V.) Pro. Verb Pro. Rep.V.
(Minu) (Pr.Per.) (Mini's)

Minu's brother asked her if she had finished her assignment. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb Pro.
(You) (P.Per.) (Your)

5. (1) He says "I go for a walk every morning." → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Pro.Verb
(He)(S.Pr.)

He says that he goes for a walk every morning. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb
(I) (S.Pr.)

As the Rep.V. is in the Pr. Tense (say) there will be no change in the Tense

6. (4) The Principal said, "Why didn't you attend the flag hoisting ceremony, Anuj?" → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Pro. Verb.
(Anuj)(S.Past)

The Principal asked Anuj why he didn't attend the flag hoisting ceremony. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Pro. Verb
(You) (Past Perfect)

7. (3) I said to him, "Where have you lost the pen I brought for you

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Verb Pro. Verb Pro. Verb Pro.
(him) (I) (S.Past) (him)

Yesterday?" → (D.S.)

↓

Ext. Wd.

I asked him where he had lost the pen I had brought him

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Pro. Verb Verb Pro.
(You) (P.Per.) (P.Per.) (You)

the previous day. (I.S.)

↓

Ext. wd.

8. (1) He said, "Garima wants to take up a job while her husband wants

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Verb Inf. Verb Pro. Verb
(S.Pr.) (Garima's) (S.Pr.)

her to look after the family. → (D.S.)

↓

Pro. (Garima's)

He said that Garima wanted to take up a job while her husband

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Conj. Verb Inf.
(S.Past)

wanted her to look after the family. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓
Verb Pro.
(S.Past) (Garima)

9. (3) She said, "When I was a child, I wasn't afraid of ghosts." → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Pro. Verb Pro. Verb
(She) (S.Past) (She) (S.Past)

She said that when she was a child, she wasn't afraid of ghosts. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb Pro. Verb
(I) (S.Past) (I) (S.Past)

10. (4) He said, "Reena do you want to buy a house in Noida?" → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. (H.V.) Pro. Verb Inf.Verb
(Reena)(S.Pr.)

He asked Reena if she wanted to buy a house in Noida. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb Inf. Verb
(You)(S.Past)

11. (1) I said to my friend, "Can I borrow your dictionary for one day?" → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Modal Pro. Verb Pro.
(Verb) (I) (friend's)

I asked my friend if I could borrow his dictionary for

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Conj.Pro. Modal Verb Pro.
(I) (Verb) (your)

one day → (I.S.)

12. (3) He said, "Let Hari come with us, mother. I'll take care of him." → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Pro. Pro. Modal Rep.V.
(He, mother)(He) (will) (Hari)

He told his mother to let Hari come with them as he would take care of him. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V.Pro. Pro. Pro. Modal Pro.
(us) (I) (will) (him)

13. (3) "No," said the child. "I won't kneel, for if I do, I shall spoil my new pair of trousers. → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V Pro. I Modal Verb Pro. H.V. Pro. Modal Verb
 (the child) (will not) (child) (child)
 ↓
 Pro. (child's)
 The child said that he would not kneel, for if he did, he would
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Conj. Pro Modal Pro. H.V. Pro. Modal
 (I) (will not) (I) (I) (Shall)
 spoil his new pair of trousers. → (I.S.)
 ↓
 Pro. (my)
14. (4) The chairman of the selection committee said, "We shall finalise the rest of our team after we have selected the skipper." (D.S.) [Pro. 'we'; 'our' stands for 'The chairman of the selection committee']
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Pro. Modal Verb
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro. Pro. Verb (Pr. Per.)
 The chairman of the selection committee said that they would finalise
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V Conj. Pro. (we) Modal (shall)
 the rest of their team after they had selected the skipper. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Modal Pro. Pro. Verb
 (shall) (our) (We) (P. Per.)
15. (1) He said, "Has anybody been unkind to you?" → (D.S.).
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Verb Pro. (me)
 (Pr. Per.)
 He asked me if anybody had been unkind to me. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Conj. Verb (P. Per.) Pro.
 (you)
16. (4) The Pilot said, "Please don't panic but tighten your seat belts." → (D.S.).
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Verb Pro.
 (S. Pr.) (passengers)
 The Pilot told the passengers not to panic but to tighten their seat belts. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Inf. Pro.
 (your)
- When a sentence begins with don't in D.S. not to will be used in I.S.
17. (2) He said, "Ravi, why are you sounding so depressed today?" (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. H.V. Pro. Verb Ext. wd.
 (Ravi) (Pr. Cont)
 He asked Ravi why he was sounding so depressed that day. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Pro. verb Ext. wd.
 (You) (P. Cont)
- The word order will be Subject/ Pronoun + Verb (he + was sounding)
18. (3) "I shall remain here and the tailor won't be able to find me," said she.
 → (D.S.). ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro Modal Verb Ext. Wd. Modal Pro. (I)
 (will not)
 She said that she would remain there and the tailor would not
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Conj. Pro. Modal Verb Ext. Wd. Modal
 (I) (shall) (here) (will not)
 be able to find her. → (I.S.)
19. (1) Mother said, "Gaurav, you will be eligible for voting when you are 18." → (D.S.).
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Pro. Modal Pro. H.V.
 (Gaurav) (Gaurav)
 Mother told Gaurav that he would be eligible for voting when he was 18" → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Conj. Pro. Modal H.V.
 (you) (will)
20. (4) He said, "Bravo ! You have done well." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Inter. Pro. Verb
 (him) (Pr. Per.)
 He applauded him, saying that he had done well. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Pro. Conj. Pro. Verb
 (you) (P. Per.)
21. (3) He said to me, "You are getting lazy day by day;" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Pro. Verb
 (me) (Pr. Cont.)
 He told me that I was getting lazy day by day. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Conj. Pro. Verb
 (you) (P. cont.)
22. (3) "When will I be able to vote?" I asked my mother. → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Modal Pro. Rep. V.
 (I)
 I asked my mother when I would be able to vote. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Pro. Modal
 (I) (will)
23. (4) I said, "Father, when will you buy me a motor cycle?" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Modal Pro. Verb Pro.
 (father) (I)
 I asked my father when he would buy me a motor cycle. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Pro. Pro. Modal Verb Pro.
 (I) (you) (will) (me)
24. (3) He said to me, "Is there any possibility of my getting promotion this year?" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. H.V. Pro. Ger. Ext. Wd.
 (me)
 He asked me if there was any possibility of his getting promotion that year. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Conj. H.V. Pro. Ext. Wd.
 (my)

DIRECT/INDIRECT SPEECH

25. (3) The dealer said, "Either make your purchases or walk out of my shop."
→ (D.S.) ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

The dealer told the customer that he should either make purchases or walk out
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
of his shop.

26. (2) He said, "I do not wish to see any of you; go away." → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V Pro. Inf.Verb Pro. Verb

(He) (them)

He said that he did not wish to see any of them and ordered them to

go away.

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

↓ Rep.V Conj.Pro. Inf.Verb Pro. Conj. Inf.

Verb. (he) (you)

27. (3) He said to us, "Why are you all sitting about there doing nothing?"
→ (D.S.) ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V.	H.V. Pro.	Verb
	(us)	(Pr.Cont.)

He asked us why we were all sitting about there doing nothing. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Pro. H.V Verb.
 (you) (Pr. cont.)

28. (3) "May you live long and prosper," said the old lady to her son. → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓

H.V Pro. Rep. V

(son)

The old lady prayed for her son and said that he might live long and prosper. → (I.S.) ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. H.V
 (you) (may)

29. (3) "Many happy returns of your birthday," we said → (D.S.)

↓ ↓

Pro. (him) Rep.V.

We wished him many happy returns of his birthday. → (I.S.)

↓
Rep.V.

↓
Pro. (your)

30. (4) "Fie ! a soldier and afraid of fighting !" said Babar. → (D.S.)

↓
Rep.V.

Babar cursed and exclaimed that a soldier should not be afraid of fighting.

→ (I.S.) ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V. Rep.V. Conj.

31. (3) He said to Sita * When do you intend to pay back the money you
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Verb Inf. Verb Pro.
 (Sita)(S. Pro) (sita)

borrowed from me ? " → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓

Verb Prep. Pro.

(S. Past) (He)

He enquired Sita when she intended to pay back the money she

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Pro. Verb Inf. Verb Pro.
(you) (S.Past)

had borrowed from him. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
Verb Prep. Pro.
(P. Per.) (me)

32. (4) "So help me Heaven," he cried, "I will never steal again." → (D.S.)

[illegible]

Another way of conversion –

He prayed to Heaven to help him in his resolve not to steal again.

33. (4) She said," I'll give you ₹ 100 to keep your mouth shut."
→ (D.S.) ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.	Pro.	H.V.	Pro	Inf.	Verb	Pro.
(She)	(will)		(him)		(S. Pre.)	(him)

She proposed that she would give him ₹ 100 to keep his mouth shut.

→ (I.S.) ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V.	Conj.	Pro.	H.V.	Pro.	Inf.	Verb	Pro.
		(she)	(will)	(you)		(S. Pr.)	(your)

34. (3) "Doctor," the patient cried please tell me how much time I have."
→ (D.S.) ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V.	Verb	Pro.	Pro.	H.V.
	(S. Pr.)	(the patient)	(me)	

The patient pleaded with the doctor to tell him/her how much time he/she had. → (I.S.) ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

↓	Rep.V.	Inf.	Verb	Pro.	Pro.
H.V.		(S.Pr.)	(me)		(I)

(have)

35. (2) "Let's give a party", said Jaya. → (D.S.)

↓ ↓

Verb Rep.V.

"Let's not," said her husband. → (D.S.)

↓ ↓
Rep.V. Pro.
(Jaya

Jaya suggested giving a party but her husband opposed the idea → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Rep.V.

(her)

36. (4) He said to her, "Did it shake you up as much it shook me?"
 → (D.S.) ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V.	Pro.	Verb	Pro.	Pro.	Verb	Pro.
				(her)		(He)

[illegible]

37. (3) The Chief Minister said, "What a disaster the earthquake is!"
→ (D.S.) ↓

Rep.V.

The Chief Minister exclaimed with sorrow that the earthquake was a terrible disaster. → (I.S.)

↓	↓	↓
Rep. V	Conj.	H.V. (is)

62. (3) "How long does the journey take," my co-passenger asked me.
 → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓

H.V. Verb Rep.V.

My co-passenger wanted to know how long the journey would take.
 → (I.S.)

↓

Rep.V.

63. (1) "How clever of you to have solved the puzzle so quickly !" said the mother.
 → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓

Pro. Verb Rep.V.

(Pr. Per.)

The mother exclaimed admiringly that it was very clever of him to
 ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V. Conj. Pro. (you)

have solved the puzzle so quickly. → (I.S.)

↓

Verb (Pr. Per)

64. (2) He said he goes for a walk every morning. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V. Pro. Verb Prep.

(He) (S. Pr.)

He said, "I go for a walk every morning. → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep. V. Pro. Verb Prep.

(He) (S. Pr.)

65. (3) I reiterated, "I don't care about the job" → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V. Pro. H.V.

(I)

I reiterated that I didn't care about the job. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep. V. Conj. Pro. H.V.

(I)

66. (2) I said to my brother, "Let us go to some hill station for a change."
 → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V. Pro. Verb

(I, brother)

I suggested to my brother that we should go to some hill station for a
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Modal Verb

(us)

change. → (I.S.)

67. (4) I wondered how many discoveries went unheeded. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓

Rep.V. Verb

(S. Past)

I said, "How many discoveries go unheeded ?" → (D.S.)

↓ ↓

Rep. V. Verb (S. Pr.)

68. (1) Gopan said to me, "Can you do these sums for me ?" → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V. H.V. Pro. H.V. Ext. Wd. Prep. Pro.

(me) (Gopan)

Gopan asked me if I could do those sums for him. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep. V. Conj. Pro. H.V. H.V. Ext. Wd. Prep. Pro.

(you) (me)

69. (1) The boss said, "It's time we began planning our work." → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V. Pro. Verb Pro.

(the boss, (Pr. Cont.) (the boss, staff)

The boss said that it was time they had begun planning their work
 → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V. Conj. H.V. Pro. Verb

(we) (P. Per.)

70. (3) He said to the judge, "I did not commit this crime." → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V. Pro. H.V. Verb Ext. Wd.

(He) (P. per.) (S. Pre)

He told the judge that he had not committed that crime. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep. V. Conj. Pro. H.V. Verb Ext. Wd.

(I) (P. per.) (S. Past)

71. (3) Rahul said, "I will do it now or never." → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V. pro. H.V. H.V. Ext. Wd.

Rahul said that he would do it then or never. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep. V. Conj. Pro. H.V. H.V. Ext. Wd.

(I)

72. (2) My father once said to me, "If I can't trust my people, then
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V. Pro. H.V. Pro.

(father) (father's)

I don't want to be doing this." → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Pro. H.V. Verb Ext. Wd.

(father)

My father once told me that if he couldn't trust his people, then he
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V. Conj. Pro. H.V. Pro. Pro.

(I) (my) (I)

didn't want to be doing that. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓

H.V. Verb Ext. Wd.

73. (1) Doshi said to his wife, "Please select one of these necklaces." → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V. Verb Ext. Wd.

Doshi requested his wife to select one of those necklaces. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep. V. Inf. Verb Ext. Wd.

74. (4) He wrote in his report, "The rainfall has been scanty till now → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V. Verb Ext. Wd.

(Pr. Per.)

He reported that the rainfall had been scanty till then. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep. V. Conj. Verb Ext. Wd.

(Past Per.)

75. (4) Govind,"said the manager sternly, "I command you to tell
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Verb Pro. Inf. Verb
 (manager) (Govind)
 me what the old man said." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Pro. Verb (S. Past)
 (manager)
 The manager sternly commanded Govind to tell him what the old
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Inf. Verb Pro.
 (me)
 man had said. → (I.S.)
 ↓
 Verb (P.Per.)
 76. (3) I said to him, "Where have you lost the pen I brought for you
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Verb Pro. Verb Pro. Verb Pro.
 (him) (I) (S. Past) (him)
 Yesterday?" → (D. S.)
 ↓
 Ext. Wd.
 I asked him where he had lost the pen I had brought him
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Verb Verb Pro.
 (You) (P. Per.) (P. Per.) (You)
 the previous day. (I.S)
 ↓
 Ext. wd.
 77. (3) She said to Rita, "Please help me with my homework." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Verb Pro. Pro.
 (She) (Her)
 She requested Rita to help her with her homework. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Pro. (me) Pro. (my)
 78. (2) "What a stupid fellow you are!" she remarked. → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro. H.V. Rep.V.
 She exclaimed that he was a very stupid fellow. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Conj. Pro. (you)
 79. (1) The police said to the thief, "Don't move." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. H.V. Verb
 The police ordered the thief not to move. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Inf. Verb
 80. (3) He said, "I am going to college just now." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Pro. Verb Verb Ext. Wd.
 (He) (Pr. cont.)
 He said that he was going to college just then. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Conj. Pro. Verb Ext. Wd.
 (I) (Pr. Cont.)

81. (4) The teacher said to the student, "Can you explain this?" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. H.V. Pro. Verb Ext. Wd.
 (the student)
 The teacher asked the student whether he could explain that
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 → (I.S.) Rep. V. Conj. Pro. H.V. Verb Ext. Wd.
 (you)
 82. (4) Ramu said, "My master is planning to build a huge
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Pro. Verb Inf. Verb
 (Ramu's) (Pr. Cont.)
 house in Khandala. → (D.S.)
 Ramu said that his master was planning to build a huge
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Conj. Pro. Verb Inf. Verb
 (my) (P. Cont.)
 house in Khandala. → (I.S.)
 83. (4) Nandita said to Nitin, "Can you solve this sum?" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. H.V. Pro. Verb Ext. Wd.
 Nandita asked Nitin if he could solve that sum. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Conj. Pro. H.V. Verb Ext. Wd.
 (you)
 84. (3) He said, "How lovely the scene is!" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. H.V.
 He exclaimed that the scene was very lovely. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Conj. H.V.
 85. (2) Bill said, "I am here to help you all." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Pro. H.V. ext. Inf. Verb Pro.
 (Bill) (wd.) (us)
 Bill said that he was there to help us all. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Conj. Pro. H.V. ext. Inf. Verb Pro.
 (I) (wd.) (you)
 86. (2) The kids yelled in a loud voice, "We love our family." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Pro. Verb Pro.
 (the kids) (S.Pr.) (kids)
 The kids yelled in a loud voice that they loved their family. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Conj. Pro. Verb Pro.
 (we) (S.Past) (our)
 87. (3) He said to me, "Please visit my company tomorrow." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Verb Pro. Ext. wd.
 (S.Pr.) (His)
 He requested me to visit his company the next day. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Inf. Verb Pro. Ext. wd.
 (my)
 88. (2) He said, "My parents are arriving tomorrow." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Pro. Verb Ext. wd.
 (His) (Pr. Cont.)

- He said that his parents were arriving the next day. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V Conj. Pro. (P.cont)
 (my)
89. (1) He said, "How cruel of him!" → (D.S.)
 ↓
 Rep.V.
 He remarked that it was very cruel of him. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj.
90. (2) "How did it get here?" She wanted to know. → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 H.V. Pro. Verb ext.wd. Rep.V.
 (S.Pr.)
- She wanted to know how it had got there. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. (P.Per.) Ext.wd.
91. (3) "You are one of Pinkerton's men. I presume," he said. → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro. H.V. Pro. Verb Rep.V.
 (me) (he) (S.Pr.)
- He said that he presumed me as one of Pinkerton's men. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Conj. Pro. Verb Pro.
 (I) (S.Past) (you)
92. (4)
 "Away!" she said to the man, "do not trouble your family any more." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V. Verb Pro
 (man's)
- She asked the man to go away and not trouble his family any more. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Inf. Verb Conj. Verb Pro
 (your)
93. (1)
 He asked me, "Have you finished reading the magazine?" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V. Pro. Verb
 (me) (Pr. Per. Tense)
- He asked me whether I had finished reading the magazine. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb
 (you) (P. Per. Tense)
94. (3) He said, "We have done our work." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. (Pr. Per.) Pro.
 He said that they had done their work. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb Pro.
 (we) (P. Per.) (our)
95. (1)
 He said that he had been waiting there for a long time. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb Ext.wd.
 (he) (P. Per. cont.)

- He said, "I have been waiting here for a long time." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Verb Ext.wd.
 (he) (Pr. Per. Cont.)
96. (1) "Please take me to the officer," said the visitor. → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Verb Pro. Rep.V.
 (S.Pr.) (Visitor)
- The visitor requested them to take him to the officer. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Inf. Verb Pro.
 (me)
97. (3) Nitin said, "What a pleasant atmosphere this place has!" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Ext.wd. H.V.
- Nitin exclaimed with joy that that place had a pleasant atmosphere. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Ext.wd. H.V.
98. (1) Aarati said, "I am in a hurry today." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. H.V. Ext.wd.
 (Aarati)
- Aarati said that she was in a hurry that day. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. H.V. Ext.wd.
 (I)
99. (3) They said, "We are practising for the next match." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Verb
 (they) (Pr. Cont.)
- They said that they were practising for the next match. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb
 (we) (P. Cont.)
100. (2) He said, "Long may you live!" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Modal Pro. Verb
 He prayed that my life might be long. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Noun Modal
 (you)
101. (3) "When did you meet my brother?" she asked → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 H.V. Pro. Verb Pro. Rep.V.
 (me)
- She asked me when I had met her brother. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Verb Pro.
 (you) (P. Per.) (my)
102. (4) Ruby requested me to lend her ₹ 1000 the next day. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Inf. Verb Pro. Ext. Wd.
 Ruby said to me, "Please lend me ₹ 1000 tomorrow." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Verb Pro.
 (her)
103. (1) "Do you want balloons?" he said to the child. → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 H.V. Pro. Verb Rep.V.
 (child) (S. Pr)

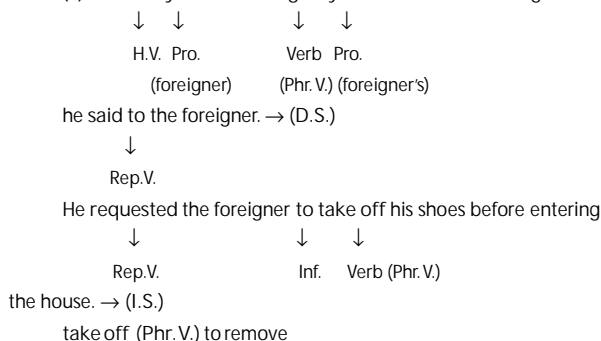
- He said that he intended to leave for Delhi that night. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb Inf. Verb Ext. Wd.
 (I) (S. Past)
118. (2) He said, "The sun rises in the East." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Verb
 (S. Pr.)
- He said that the sun rises in the East. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Verb
 (S. Pr.)
- When the statement is a Universal Truth, the Tense of Verb remains unchanged.
119. (1) Ram asked Krishna, "Where are you going today?" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V. Pro. Verb Ext. Wd.
 (Krishna)
- Ram asked Krishna where he was going that day. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Verb Ext. Wd.
 (you) (P. Cont.)
120. (2) He said, "What a fool Tom is!" → (D.S.)
 ↓
 Rep.V.
 He exclaimed that Tom was a fool. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj.
121. (1) "What kind of scheme do you have?" Amit asked the insurance agent. → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 H.V. Pro. H.V. Rep.V.
 (Insurance agent)
- Amit asked the insurance agent what kind of scheme he/she had. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. H.V.
 (you)
122. (2) The doctor said to the patient, "Take complete rest." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Verb
 The doctor advised the patient to take complete rest. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Inf. Verb
123. (4) Mini said to me, "I have bought this flat for my mother." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Verb Ext. Wd. Pro.
 (Mini) (Pr. Per.) (Mini's)
- Mini told me that she had bought that flat for her mother. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb Ext. Wd. Pro.
 (I) (P. Per.) (my)
124. (1) He said "I will come again." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. H.V. Verb
 (I)
- He said that he would come again. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. H.V. Verb
 (I)

125. (2) "Don't do any more work until you have had a rest," her mother advised her. → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V. Verb Conj. Pro. Verb
 (Pr. per.)
- Her mother advised her not to do any more work until she had had a rest. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Verb Pro. Verb
 (you) (P. Per.)
126. (3) "Make me another suit like this," He said to the tailor. → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Verb Pro. Ext. Wd. Rep.V.
 (S. Pr.) (he)
- He asked the tailor to make him another suit like that. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Inf. Verb Pro. Ext. Wd.
 (me)
127. (4) My Principal told me, "Don't conduct any test tomorrow." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V. Verb Ext. Wd.
 My Principal ordered me not to conduct any test the next day. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Verb Ext. Wd.
128. (3) The boy said, "Bravo! You have done well." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Inter. Pro. Verb
 (him) (Pr. Per.)
- The boy applauded him, saying that he had done well. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb
 (you) (P. Per.)
129. (2) I said to my sister, "I brought you a doll yesterday." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Verb Pro. Ext. Wd.
 (I) (S. Past) (sister)
- I told my sister that I had brought her a doll the previous day. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb Pro. Ext. Wd.
 (I) (P. Per.) (you)
130. (2) The captain said to the army, "March forward, now." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Verb Ext. Wd.
 The captain ordered the army to march forward then. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Inf. Verb Ext. Wd.
131. (3) They said, "We've lived here for a long time." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. H.V. Verb Ext. Wd.
 (they)(have) (P. Per.)
- They said that they had lived there for a long time. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb Ext. Wd.
 (we) (P. Per.)
132. (2) "Would you open the door, please?" she said to me. → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 H.V. Pro. Verb Rep.V.
 (me)

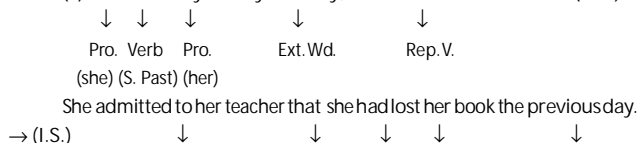
- She requested me to open the door. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Inf. Verb
133. (3) The teacher said, "Gandhiji was born in India." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V. Verb
 The teacher said that Gandhiji was born in India. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. H.V. Verb
 As the statement is a Universal Truth, there will be no change in the Tense of the Verb.
134. (3) The teacher said to the student, "Why do you disturb the class?" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V. Pro. Verb
 (student) (S. Pr.)
 The teacher asked the student why he disturbed the class.
 → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Verb
 (you) (S. Past)
135. (1) Rita said to me, "Will you lend me this classic?" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V. Pro. Verb Pro. Ext. Wd.
 (me) (Rita)
 Rita asked me if I would lend her that classic. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. H.V. Verb Pro. Ext. Wd.
 (you) (me)
136. (1) The lady said to the servant, "If you don't wash the clothes properly" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. H.V. Verb
 (servant)
 I will dismiss you." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro. H.V. Verb Pro.
 (the lady) (servant)
 The lady warned the servant that she would dismiss her if she
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. H.V. Verb Pro. Pro.
 (I) (you) (you)
 didn't wash the clothes properly. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 H.V. Verb
137. (1) There are ceremonies going on," he said to me. → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 H.V. Verb Rep.V.
 He told me that there were ceremonies going on. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. H.V. Verb
 138. (3) He said to Manoj, "May you prosper!" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Modal Pro.
 (Manoj)
 He wished that Manoj might prosper. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Modal
 139. (3) The mother said, "What can I do for you, my son?" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V. Pro. H.V. Pro. Pro.
 (mother) (son) (mother's)

- The mother asked her son what she could do for him. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Pro. H.V. H.V. Pro.
 (my) (I) (you)
140. (2) My Daddy always says, "Getting up early in the morning is a good habit." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Ger. H.V.
 My Daddy always says that getting up early in the morning is a good habit. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep. V Conj. Ger.
 As the statement is a Universal Truth, there will be no change in the Tense of the Verb.
141. (1) "Be quiet," I said to them. → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 H.V. Rep.V.
 I told them to be quiet. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Inf. H.V.
142. (3) The mother says to the child, "The sun rises in the East." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Verb
 (S. Pr.)
 The mother tells the child that the sun rises in the East. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Verb
 (S. Pr.)
143. (2) He said, "The teacher usually does not ask any question." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V. Verb.
 He said that the teacher usually did not ask any question. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. H.V. Verb
144. (1) "Where do you live?" asked the stranger. → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 H.V. Pro. Verb Rep.V.
 (me) (S. Pr.)
 The stranger asked where I lived → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Verb
 (you) (S. Past)
145. (4) I said to him, "How do you know this?" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V. Pro. Verb Ext. Wd.
 (she) (S. Pr.)
 I asked him how he knew that. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Verb Ext. Wd.
 (you) (S. Past)
146. (1) He said, "We are all sinners." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. H.V.
 He said that we are all sinners. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. H.V.
 [Universal Truth]

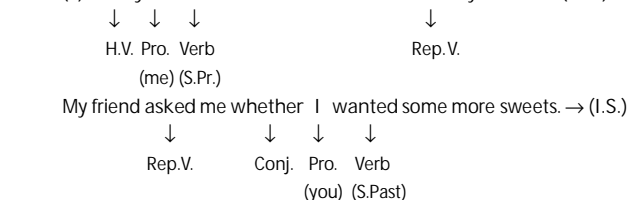
147. (1) "Would you mind taking off your shoes before entering the house?"



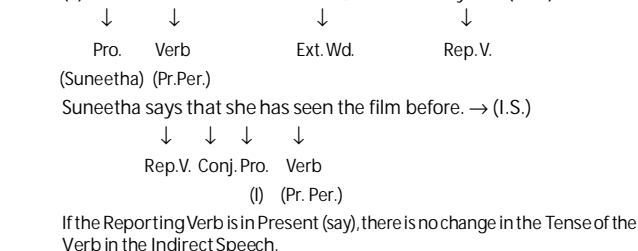
148. (1) "I lost my book yesterday," she said to her teacher. → (D.S.)



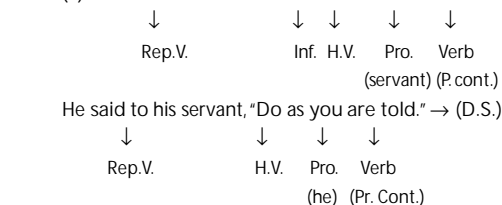
149. (3) "Do you want some more sweets?" asked my friend. → (D.S.)



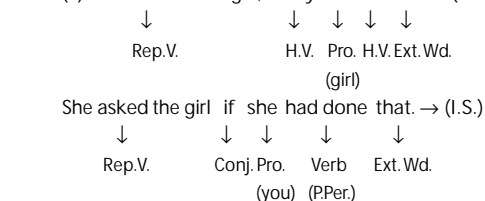
150. (2) "I have seen the film before," Suneetha says. → (D.S.)



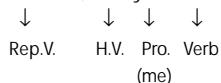
151. (2) He ordered his servant to do as he was told. → (I.S.)



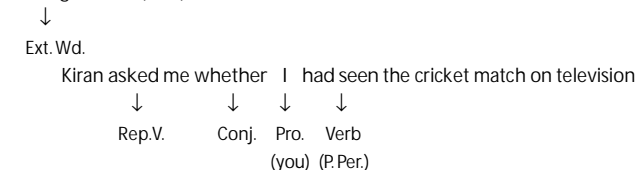
152. (3) She said to the girl, "Did you do this?" → (D.S.)



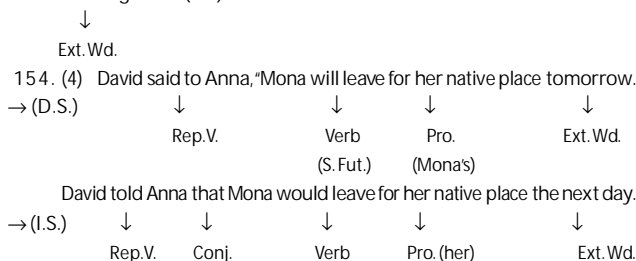
153. (2) Kiran asked me, "Did you see the cricket match on television



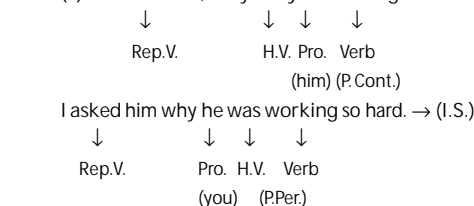
last night?" → (D.S.)



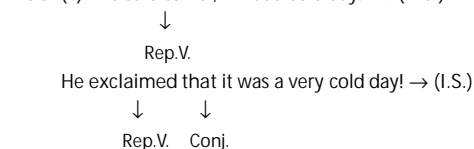
the earlier night. → (I.S.)



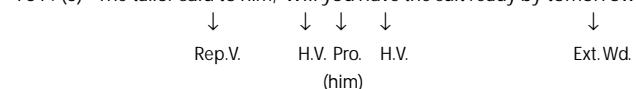
155. (1) I said to him, "Why are you working so hard?" → (D.S.)



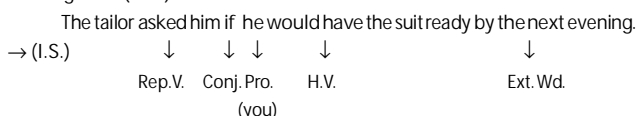
156. (4) He said to her, "What a cold day!" → (D.S.)



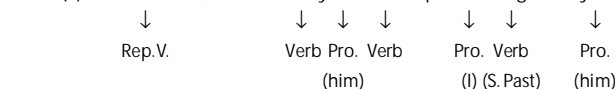
157. (3) The tailor said to him, "Will you have the suit ready by tomorrow



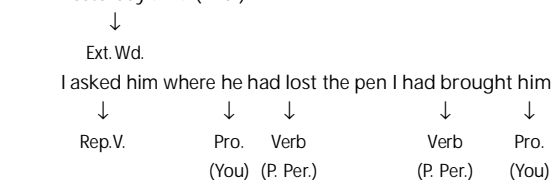
evening?" → (D.S.)



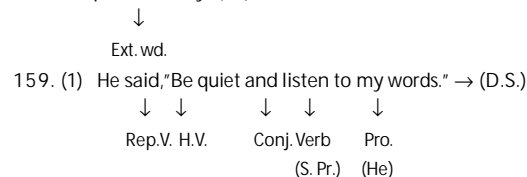
158. (3) I said to him, "Where have you lost the pen I brought for you



Yesterday?" → (D. S.)



the previous day. (I.S.)



- He urged him to be quiet and listen to his words. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Inf. H.V. Conj. Verb Pro.
 (S. Pr.) (my)
160. (2) He said to me, "I have often told you not to play with fire." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. H.V. Verb Pro. Inf. Verb Prep.
 (he) (Pr. Per.) (me) (S. Pr.)
- He told me that he had often told me not to play with fire. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. H.V. Verb Pro. Inf. Verb Prep.
 (I) (P. Per.) (you) (S. Pr.)
161. (4) The Captain said to his men, "Stand at ease." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Verb (S. Pr.)
- The Captain commanded his men to stand at ease. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Inf. Verb
162. (4) Pawan said to me, "If I hear any news, I'll phone you." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Verb Pro. H.V. Verb Pro.
 (Pawan) (S. Pr.) (Pawan) (will) (S. Pr.) (Pawan)
- Pawan told me that if he heard any news, he would phone me. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb Pro. Verb Pro.
 (I) (S. Past) (I) (you)
- Simple Present used as a future form becomes would + Verb, not Simple Past.
163. (4) The teacher said to Mahesh, "Congratulations! Wish you success in life." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. (Mahesh)
- The teacher congratulated Mahesh and wished him success in life. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Rep.V. Pro.
 (you)
164. (1) The poor examinee said, "O God, take pity on me." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Verb Pro.
 (S. Pr.) (examinee)
- The poor examinee prayed to God to take pity on him. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Inf. Verb Pro.
 (me)
165. (2) "Where will you be tomorrow." I said, in case I have to ring you? → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 H.V. Pro. H.V. Ext. Wd. Rep.V. Pro. H.V. Inf. Verb Pro.
 (him) (I) (him)
- I asked where he would be the next day in case I had to ring him.
 → (I.S.) ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Verb Ext. Wd. Pro. H.V. Inf. Verb Pro.
 (you) (I) (you)
166. (3) Seeta said to me, "Can you give me your pen?" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V. Pro. Verb Pro. Pro.
 (me) (S. Pr.) (Seeta) (me)
- Seeta asked me if I could give her my pen. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. H.V. Verb Pro. Pro.
 (You) (me) (your)

167. (1) The father warned his son that he should be beware of him.
 → (I.S.) ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. H.V. H.V. Pro.
 (son) (him)
- The father warned his son, "Beware of him." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro.
 (him)
168. (1) Manna asked Rohan, "Have you sat in a trolley bus before?" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V. Pro. Verb Ext. Wd.
 (Rohan)
- Manna asked Rohan whether he had sat in a trolley bus earlier. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb Ext. Wd.
 (you) (P. Per.)
169. (2) Farhan asked Geeta, "Could you lend me a hundred rupees until tomorrow." → (D.S.) ↓
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V. Pro. Verb Pro.
 Ext. Wd. (Geeta) (Farhan)
- Farhan asked Geeta whether she could lend him a hundred rupees
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. H.V. Verb Pro.
 (You) (me)
- until the next day. → (I.S.)
170. (1) "What about going for a swim," he said "It's quite fine now." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Verb Rep.V. H.V. (is) Ext. Wd.
- He asked me what about going for a swim as it was quite fine then.
 → (I.S.) ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Verb Conj. H.V. Ext. Wd.
171. (3) "You can't bathe in this sea," he said to me, "It's very rough." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro. H.V. Verb Ext. Wd. Rep.V. H.V.
 (me) (is)
- He said that I couldn't bathe in that sea as it was very rough. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. H.V. Verb Ext. Wd. Conj. H.V.
 (you) (is)
172. (3) Jagdish said, "We passed by a beautiful lake when we went on a trip to Goa." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Phr. V. Pro. Verb
 (Jagdish +) (Jagdish +) (S. Past)
- Jagdish said that they had passed by a beautiful lake when they
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. H.V. Verb Pro.
 (we) (we)
- had gone on a trip to Goa. → (I.S.)
 ↓
 Verb (P. Per.)
 passed by, (Phr. V.) to went past
173. (4) He said to me, "I expect you to attend the function." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Pro. Inf. Verb
 (he) (me)

- He told me that he expected me to attend the function. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Pro. Inf. Verb
 (I) (you)
174. (1) He said, "Why didn't you send your application to me?" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V. Pro. Pro. Pro.
 (me) (my) (he)
- He enquired why I hadn't sent my application to him. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. H.V. Verb Pro. Pro.
 (you) (your) (me)
175. (3) Dinesh asked, "Are you going to the party tomorrow, Eliza?" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V. Pro. Verb Ext. Wd.
 Dinesh asked Eliza whether she was going to the party the next day.
 → (I.S.) ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb Ext. Wd.
 (you) (P.Cont.)
176. (3) John asked, "How long will it take to travel from Germany to South Africa?" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V. Verb Inf. Verb Prep. Prep.
- John asked how long it would take to travel from Germany to South Africa? → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Verb Inf. Verb
177. (2) "What did you see at the South Pole?" Ashok asked Anil. → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 H.V. Pro. Verb Rep.V.
 (Anil)
- Ashok asked Anil what he had seen at the South Pole. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Verb
 (you) (P.Per.)
178. (4) The visitor said to them, "Please give me a glass of water." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Verb Pro.
 (Visitor)
- The visitor requested them to give him a glass of water. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Inf. Verb Pro.
 (me)
179. (3) The policeman told the students, "Do not park your vehicles here." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V. Verb Pro. Ext. Wd.
 (Students')
- The policeman asked the students not to park their vehicles there.
 → (I.S.) ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Inf. Verb Pro. Ext. Wd.
 (your)
180. (2) The man said, "All the boys are playing in the street." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Verb
 (Pr. Cont.)
- The man told us that all the boys were playing in the street. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Verb
 (P.Cont.)

181. (4) She said, "I am sorry, I did not write." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. H.V. Pro. H.V. Verb
 (she) (she)
- She apologized that she had not written. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb
 (I) (P.Per.)
- apologized : said sorry for doing something wrong
182. (4) "All right, yes, I was wrong and you were right." he said. → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro. H.V. Conj. Pro. H.V. Rep.V.
 (he) (me)
- He admitted that he had been wrong and I had been right. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb Conj. Pro. Verb
 (I) (P.Per.) (you) (P.Per.)
183. (2) Nirmal said to us, "My father gave me a purse yesterday." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Verb Pro. Ext. Wd.
 (Nirmal's) (Nirmal)
- Nirmal told us that his father had given him a purse the previous day.
 → (I.S.) ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb Pro. Ext. Wd.
 (my) (P.Per) (me)
184. (3) I asked my brother if he had returned the money to his friend.
 → (I.S.) ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb Pro.
 (brother) (P.Per.) (brother's)
- I said to my brother, "Have you returned the money to your friend?"
 → (D.S.) ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V. Pro. Verb Pro.
 (he) (his)
185. (2) Bala's mother : "Will you lock the door, Bala?" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 H.V. Pro. Verb
 (Bala)
- Bala's mother asked Bala if he would lock the door. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb
 (you)
186. (3) "Are you ready, Raju?" mother asked. → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 H.V. Pro.
 (Raju)
- Mother asked Raju if he was ready. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. H.V.
 (you)
187. (3) Ann told my brother, "I will meet you in your class." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Verb Pro. Pro.
 (Ann) (S. Fut.) (brother) (brother's)
- Ann told my brother that she would meet him in his class. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb Pro. Pro.
 (I) (you)

188. (1) Naren said, "Why are you still waiting here, Binod?" → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. H.V. Pro. Verb Ext. Wd.
(Binod)

Naren asked Binod why he was still waiting there. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Pro. H.V. Verb Ext. Wd.
(you)

189. (1) "Jack fell as he'd have wished," the mother said. → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Verb Pro. H.V. H.V. Verb Rep. V.
(S.Past) (Jack) (would) (S. Past)

The mother said that Jack had fallen as he would have wished. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Conj. Verb Pro. H.V. Verb
(P. Per.) (he) (S. Past)

190. (3) "Can you see a woman seated on the bench in a park?" Alice asked her. → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
H.V. Pro. Verb Rep. V.
(her)

Alice asked her if she could see a woman seated on the bench in a park.

→ (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Conj. Pro. H.V. Verb
(you)

191. (1) The king said, "My force will protect the kingdom." → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Pro. Verb
(kings) (S. Fut.)

The king said that his force would protect the kingdom. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb
(my)

192. (4) The student said, "Let me come in." → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Pro. Verb
(student)

The student requested that he might be allowed to come in. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Inf. Verb
(me)

193. (3) He said, "Babies, drink milk." → (D.S.)

↓ ↓
Rep.V. Verb

He advised the babies to drink milk. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Inf. Verb

194. (3) I said, "I came here yesterday." → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Pro. Verb Ext. Wd. Ext. Wd.
(I) (S. Past)

I said that I had come there the previous day. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb Ext. Wd. Ext. Wd.
(I) (P. Per.)

195. (2) He said, "The government is writing letters." → (D.S.)

↓ ↓
Rep.V. Verb
(Pr. Cont.)

He said that the government was writing letters. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Conj. Verb
(P. Cont.)

196. (1) He said, "I have passed the examination." → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Pro. Verb
(he) (Pr. Per.)

He said that he had passed the examination. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb
(I) (P. Per.)

197. (2) The doctor says, "It is better you undergo a surgery next week." → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. H.V. Pro. Verb Ext. Wd.
(me)

The doctor says that it is better I undergo a surgery the following week. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Conj. H.V. Pro. Verb Ext. Wd.
(you)

198. (1) The teacher asked the student when he would submit his assignment. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Pro. Verb Pro.
(student) (student's)

The teacher said to the student, "When will you submit your assignment?" → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. H.V. Pro. Verb Pro.
(he) (his)

199. (4) The Principal asked me whether I had informed the Chief Guest

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb
(me) (P. Per.)

of the revised schedule the day before. → (I.S.)

↓
Ext. Wd.

The Principal said to me, "Did you inform the Chief Guest of the revised schedule yesterday?" → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Ext. Wd. Rep.V. H.V. Pro. Verb
(I)

200. (4) "Don't play on the grass, boys," she said. → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
H.V. Verb Rep.V.

She told the boys not to play on the grass. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓
Rep.V. Verb

201. (1) "What a terrible storm it is!" he said. → (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
Pro. H.V. Rep. V.
(storm)

He exclaimed that it was a terrible storm. → (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Rep.V. Conj. Pro. H.V.
(it)

202. (2) The traveller said, "What a beautiful sight!" → (D.S.)

↓
Rep.V.

- The traveller exclaimed that it was a beautiful sight. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj.Pro. H.V.
 (sight)
203. (2) The Chief Guest said, "It gives me great pleasure to be here this morning." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Ext.Wd. Rep.V. Verb Pro. Inf. H.V. Ext.Wd.
 (S.Per) (Chief Guest)
- The Chief Guest said that it gave him great pleasure to be there that morning. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Ext.Wd. Rep.V.Conj. Verb Pro. Inf. H.V. Ext.Wd.
 (S.Past)(me)
204. (1) He said, "What a lovely voice she has!" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. H.V.
 He exclaimed that she had a very lovely voice. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. H.V.
 (she)
205. (4) He said to me "Where is the post office?" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V.
 He asked me where the post office was. → (I.S.)
 ↓
 Rep.V.
206. (2) My father said, "Honesty is the best policy." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V.
 My father said that honesty is the best policy. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj.
 The statement is a Universal Truth. Hence, there will be no change in the Tense of the Verb.
207. (3) She yelled, "Please help me." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Verb Pro.
 (she)
 She yelled for someone to help her. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Inf. Verb Pro.
 (me)
208. (1) He asked me why I was late. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. H.V.
 (me)
 He asked me, "Why are you late?" → (D.S.)
 ↓
 Rep.V.
209. (1) He said that I needn't wait there. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj.Pro. Ext.Wd.
 (you)
 He said, "You needn't wait here." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Ext.Wd.
 (me)
210. (3) I said to the worker, "How do you like your job?" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. H.V. Pro. Verb Pro.
 (worker) (S.Pr.) (worker's)

- I asked the worker how he liked his job. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Verb Pro.
 (you) (S. Past) (your)
211. (1) "I don't know why they haven't signed the papers and accepted the gift," said Crene to me. → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro. H.V. Verb Pro. H.V. Verb
 (Crene) (Pr. Per.)
 ↓ ↓
 Verb Rep.V.
 Crene told me that he didn't know why they hadn't signed the papers
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. H.V. Verb Pro. Verb
 (I) (H.V.) (P.Per)
 and accepted the gift. → (I.S.)
 ↓
 Verb
212. (2) She said, "I must have a computer to prepare a powerpoint presentation." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Modal H.V. Inf. Verb
 (she)
 She said she should have a computer to prepare a powerpoint
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V.Pro. Modal H.V. Inf. Verb
 (I)
 presentation. → (I.S.)
213. (1) "Don't hesitate to clear your doubts," the teacher said. → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 H.V. Verb Inf. Verb Pro. Rep.V.
 (S.Pr.) (my)
 The teacher warned me not to hesitate in cleaning my doubts. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Inf. Verb Verb Pro.
 (your)
214. (1) He said, "I am glad to be here this evening." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. H.V. Inf. H.V. Ext. Wd. Ext. Wd.
 (he)
 He said that he was glad to be there that evening. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. H.V. Inf. H.V. Ext. Wd. Ext. Wd.
 (I)
215. (2) Mrs. Shanker said, "I know what it is to be depressed." → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Pro. Verb H.V. Inf. H.V. (Adj.)
 (Mrs. (S. pr.)
 Shanker)
 Mrs. Shanker said that she knew what it was to be depressed. → (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb H.V. Inf. H.V. Adj.
 (I) (S. Past)
216. (2) "Who now," they had asked, "will listen to our troubles and protect us from the crocodiles?" → (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Ext. Word. Rep.V. Verb Pro.
 (S. Fut.) (their)
 ↓
 Pro. (them)

- Suresh said to Prasad, "Did you watch the cricket match on television last night." → (D.S.)
- ↓ ↓ ↓
- Rep.V. H.V. Pro. Verb
(Prasad)
231. (2) Father said to me, "You are idling away your time." → (D.S.)
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Rep.V. Pro. Verb Pro.
(me) (Pr.Cont.) (my)
- Father told me that I was idling away my time. → (I.S.)
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Verb Pro.
(you) (PCont.) (your)
232. (2) The Captain said to his men, "Fall into line." → (D.S.)
- ↓ ↓
- Rep.V. Verb
- The Captain commanded his men to fall into line. → (I.S.)
- ↓ ↓ ↓
- Rep.V. Inf. Verb
233. (2) The priest said, "May God pardon this sinner!" → (D.S.)
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Rep.V. H.V. Verb Ext.Wd.
- The priest prayed that God might pardon that sinner. → (I.S.)
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Rep.V. Conj. H.V. Verb Ext.Wd.
234. (4) Ashmita advised me to go and see a doctor. → (D.S.)
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Rep.V. Inf. Verb Conj. Verb
- Ashmita told me, "Go and see a doctor." → (I.S.)
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Rep.V. Verb Conj. Verb
235. (1) She said to me, "It has been raining heavily and you cannot go." (D.S.)
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Pro₁ Rep.V. Pro₂ Pro₃ Pr.Per. Cont.
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Adv. Conj. Pro₄ Mod.V. V.
- She told me that it had been raining
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Pro₁ Rep.V. Pro₂ Conj. Pro₃ Past Per. Cont.
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Adv. Conj. Pro₄ Mod.V. V.
236. (4) John said to me, "Where have you been last night?" (D.S.)
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Sub. Rep.V Pro₁ Q. wd. Pro₂
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Ext. wd.
- have been → Pr. Per.
- John asked me where I had been
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Sub. Rep.V. Pro₁ Q. wd. Pro₂ Past Per.
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Ext. wd.
237. (3) "I'm taking my children to the zoo tomorrow,"
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Pro₁ Pr. Cont. Pro₂ N. Ob₁ Ext. wd.

- she said, "to see the baby white tiger." (D.S.)
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Pro₃ Rep.V. V. Ob₂
- She said that she was taking her children to the zoo
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Pro₃ Rep.V. Conj. Pro₁ Past Cont. Pro₂ N. Ob₁
- the next day to see the baby white tiger. (I.S.)
- ↓ ↓
- V. Ob₂
238. (3) She said, "Mother, please cook me something nice today." (D.S.)
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Pro₁ Rep.V. N. Adv. V. Pro₂ Pro₃ Adj.
- today. (D.S.)
- ↓ ↓
- Ext. wd.
- She requested her mother to cook her something
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Pro₃ Rep.V. Pro. N. Inf. (to) Pro₂ Pro₃
- nice that day. (I.S.)
- ↓ ↓
- Adj. Ext. wd.
- In Imperative Sentences (Request), to is used while changing into I.S.
239. (2) John said, "I shall be 21 tomorrow." (D.S.)
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- N. Rep.V. Pro₁ Mod. Aux. Num. Ext. wd.
- John said that he would be 21 the following day. (I.S.)
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- N. Rep.V. Conj. Pro₁ Mod. Aux. Num. Ext. wd.
240. (4) She asked, "Is the secretary coming to the meeting?" (D.S.)
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Pro₁ Rep.V. Aux. N. (Sub.) V. Ob.
- She asked if the secretary was coming to the meeting. (I.S.)
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Pro₁ Rep.V. Conj. N. (Sub.) Aux. V. Ob.
241. (3) The convict said, "Let me speak freely please." (D.S.)
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- N. (Sub.) Rep.V. V₁ Pro₁ V₂ Adv₁ Adv₂
- The convict requested that he be allowed to speak
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro₁ V₁ V₂
- freely. (I.S.)
- ↓ ↓
- Adv₁
- to will be used as it is a request
242. (1) Nisha told Monica, "What a beautiful dress you are wearing!" (D.S.)
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Sub₁ Rep.V. Sub₂ Q. wd. Adj. Ob₁ Pro₁ Aux.
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- V.
- Nisha exclaimed that Monica was wearing a very
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- Sub₁ Rep.V. Conj. Sub₂ Aux. V. Adv.
- beautiful dress. (I.S.)
- ↓ ↓
- Adj. Ob.
- very is added to the Adj.
243. (3) "Call the witness," said the magistrate. (D.S.)
- ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
- V. Ob. Rep.V. Sub

- The magistrate ordered to call the witness. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. V. Ob.
 [to will be used as it is an order]
244. (3) "Have you done this sort of work before?" said
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Aux. Pro₁ V. Pro₂ Ob. Ext.wd. Rep.V.
 his new employer. (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Pro₃ Sub.
 His new employer asked him whether he had
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro₃ Sub. Ext.wd. Conj. Pro₁ Aux.
 done that sort of work before (earlier) (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 V. Pro₂ Ob. Ext.wd.
245. (4) Rahul says that Azhar loves cricket. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub₁ Rep.V. Conj. Sub₂ S.Pr. Ob.
 Rahul says, "Azhar loves cricket." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub₁ Rep.V. Sub₂ S.Pr. Ob.
 If the Rep. V. is in the S. Pr., there is no change in the Tense of the V. in the Indirect Speech.
246. (3) "I came home last night," said he. (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro₁ S.Past Ob. Ext.wd. Rep.V. Pro₂
 He said that he had come home the previous night. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro₂ Rep.V. Conj. Pro₁ Past Per. Ob. Ext.wd.
247. (2) The beggar said, "Poverty is a great curse." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Universal Truth (Fact)
 The beggar said that poverty is a great curse. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Universal Fact
 If the Rep. Sent. tells a Universal Fact, there is no change in the Tense of the Rep. Sent. in I.S.
248. (2) "If you want to smoke, you'll have to go out,"
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Conj. Pro₁ V₁ V₂ Pro₂ Aux. Mod.V. V₃ Adv.
 said the conductor. (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Sub.
 The conductor said that if I/he wanted
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Conj. Pro V₁
 to smoke, I would have to go out. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 V₂ Pro₂ Aux. Mod.V. V₃ Adv.
249. (1) "Be careful; the steps are very slippery," I warned
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Aux₁ Adj. Sub₁ Aux₂ Adv₁ Adv₂ Sub₂ Rep.V.
 him. (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Ob.
 I warned him to be careful as the steps
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub₂ Rep.V. Ob. Aux₁ Adj. Conj. Sub₁

- were very slippery. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Aux₂ Adv₁ Adv₂
 As the sentence implies an order, to will be used in I.S.
250. (2) The old lady declared that she was going
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro₁ Past Cont.
 to walk where she pleased. They had the liberty. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 V. Pro₂ V. Pro₃ Aux. Ob.
 The old lady said, "I am going to walk where I please.
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Pro₁ Pr. Cont. V. Pro₂ V.
 We have the liberty." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro₃ Aux. Ob.
251. (1) The teacher asked me why I had been absent
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Q. wd. Pro₁ Past Per.
 the day before. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Ext. wd.
 The teacher asked me, "Why were you absent
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Q.wd. S.Past Pro₁
 yesterday?" (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Ext. wd.
252. (2) Mr. Robinson asked his son what he wanted to be
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Q. wd. Pro₁ S.Past V₁
 when he grew up. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Adv. Pro₂ Phr.V.
 "Myson," said Mr. Robinson, "what do you want
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Ob. Rep.V. Sub. Q.wd. Aux. Pro₁ S.Pr.
 to be when you grow up?" (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 V₁ Adv. Pro₂ Phr.V.
253. (4) The boys respectfully wished their teacher good morning. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Adv. S. Past Ob. Exclamation
 "Good morning Madam," said the boys to their teacher.
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 exclamation Rep.V. Sub. Ob.
 254. (3) She said, "I am sorry; I am not able.
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Pro₁ Aux₁ exclamation Pro₂ Aux₂
 to submit those papers." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 V. Pro₃ Ob.
 She apologised for not being able to submit
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Aux₂ V.
 those papers. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Ob.

255. (4) The girl wondered where the sparrows had gone. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Q.wd. Ob. Past Per.
The girl said, "Oh, where have the sparrows gone ? " (D.S.)
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Inter. Q.wd. Ob.
have gone → Pr. Per.

256. (3) She said to me, "I'm going shopping. Can I get you

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Pro₁ Aux. Pr.Cont. Mod. Pro₂ V. Pro₃
something? " (D.S.)

↓
Pro
She said she was going shopping and asked
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Pro₁ Past Cont. Rep.V.
if she could get me something. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Pro₂ Mod. V. Pro₃ Pro₄
257. (3) Ramesh informed his friend that he could make

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Conj₁ Pro₁ Mod. V.
use of his car while he was away. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
V. Prep. Pro₂ Ob₂ Conj₂ Pro₃ Aux. Adv.
Ramesh said to his friend, "You can make use

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Pro₁ Mod. V
of my car while I am away." (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Prep. Pro₂ Ob₂ Conj₂ Pro₃ Aux. Adv.

258. (1) Kala said to Radha, "Who were you speaking to

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Q.wd. Pro₁ Prep.
over the phone?" (D.S.)

↓ ↓
Prep. Ob₂
were speaking - Past Cont.

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Q.wd. Pro₁ Past Per. Cont.
to over the phone. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
Prep. Prep. Ob₂

259. (3) The king said to his men, "Do not be afraid of

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Aux₁ Aux₂ Adj. Prep.
the enemy. Face them bravely. (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Ob₂ V. Pro. Adv.
The king advised his men not to be afraid

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Aux₂ Adj.
of the enemy but face them bravely." (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Prep. Ob₂ Conj. V. Pro. Adv.
In advices, do not is changed to not to in I.S.

260. (4) Kannan said to Subha, "I'll return the book

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Pro₁ Aux. Verb Ob₂
after I have read it." (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
Pro₂ Pr. Per. Pro₃
Kannan told Subha that he would return

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Conj. Pro₁ Aux. V.
the book after he had read it. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Ob₂ Prep. Pro₂ Past Per. Pro₃

261. (3) The boss said to his secretary, "Did you

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Aux. Pro₁
discuss this matter with the manager? " (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
S. Past Pro₂ Ob₂ Prep. Ob₃
The boss asked his secretary if he

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Conj. Pro
had discussed that matter with the manager. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Past Per. Pro₂ Ob₂ Prep. Ob₃

262. (3) I said to him, "Will you go to Delhi?" (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Aux. Pro₁ V. Prep. Ob.
I asked him if he would go to Delhi. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Conj. Pro₁ Aux. V. Prep. Ob₂

263. (2) He said, "I have read this novel." (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Pro₁ Pr. Per. Pro₂ Ob.
He said that he had read that novel. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro₁ Past Per. Pro₂ Ob.
264. (3) Tania said to her friend, "Can you lend

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Mod. Pro₁ V.
me an umbrella ? " (D.S.)

↓ ↓
Pro₂ Ob₂
Tania requested her friend to lend her

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Prep. V. Pro₂
an umbrella. (I.S.)

↓
Ob₂
As the sentence implies a request, to will be used in I.S.

265. (4) Sita said, "I may go there." (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Pro. Mod. V. Adv.
Sita said that she might go there. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Mod. V. Adv.

266. (3) My friend requested me to bring him

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ V. Pro.
a sandwich. (I.S.)

↓
Ob₂

- "Please bring me a sandwich," said my friend. (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Word of V. Pro. Ob₂ Rep.V. Sub.
 request
 In request to is omitted in D.S.
267. (1) He said, "If I had the tools I could mend
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj₁ Pro₁ Aux. Ob₁ Pro₂ Mod. V.
 the car. (D.S.)
 ↓
 Ob₂
 He said that if he had the tools, he could
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj₂ Conj₁ Pro₁ Aux. Ob₁ Pro₂ Mod.
 mend the car. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 V. Ob₂
268. (2) She said to the children, "You must not
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Pro₁ Mod.
 play with fire. (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 V. Prep. Ob₂
 She told the children that they must not play
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Conj. Pro₁ Mod. V.
 with fire. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Prep. Ob₂
269. (1) Everybody says, "How well she sings!" (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Q.Wd. Adv. Pro. V.
 Everybody comments that she sings well. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. V. Adv.
270. (2) He says that he is very sorry. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Aux. Adv. word for apology
 He says, "I am very sorry." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Pro. Aux. Adv. word for apology
271. (4) Daman says, "Priya is working in Ahmedabad." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Sub₂ Pr.Cont. Prep. Ob.
 Daman says that Priya is working in Ahmedabad. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub₁ Rep.V. Conj. Sub₂ Pr.Cont. Prep. Ob.
 In a statement, wherein the Rep.V. is in Present Tense/Future Tense there is
 no change in the Rep.V. and the Tense of the Rep.Sent. in I.S.
272. (1) Anne said, "It is time to leave for the meeting. (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Pro. Aux. Inf.(to) Prep. Ob.
 Anne said that it was time to leave for
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Aux. Inf.(to) Prep.
 the meeting. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Ob.
273. (1) The old man said that he would soon be
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Mod. Adv. Aux.

- leaving the world. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 V. Ob.
 The old man said, "I shall soon be leaving
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Pro. Mod. Adv. Aux. V.
 the world. (D.S.)
 ↓
 Ob.
274. (3) "Come home early," said Mr. Matthew to his clerk. (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 V. Ob₁ Adv. Rep.V. Sub. Prep. Ob₂
 Mr. Matthew ordered his clerk to come home
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob₂ V. Ob₁
 early. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Adv.
 In order, to will be used in I.S.
275. (4) I said, "Water is essential for life." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub₁ Rep.V. Sub₂ Aux. Adj. Prep. Ob.
 I said that water is essential for life. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub₁ Rep.V. Conj. Sub₂ Aux. Adj. Prep. Ob.
 There is no change in I.S., when it is a Universal Fact.
276. (2) She asked me if I was going to college. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Conj. Pro. Past Cont. Prep. Ob₂
 She said to me, "Are you going to college?" (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Pro. Prep. Ob₂
 are — going → Pr. Cont.
277. (2) Iba said that she might go home the next day
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro₁ Mod. V. Ob. Ext.wd.
 with her sister. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Prep. Pro₂ Ob.
 Iba said, "I may go home tomorrow with
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Pro₁ Mod. V. Ob. Ext.wd. Prep.
 her sister." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Pro₂ Ob.
278. (1) He said, "I was doing it." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Pro. Past Cont. Ob.
 He said that he had been doing it. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Past Per. Cont. Ob.
279. (1) The lady asked me how my uncle was. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Q.wd. Pro. Ob. Aux.
 The lady said to me, "How is your uncle?" (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Q.wd. Aux. Pro. Ob.

280. (1) He said, "Honesty is the best policy." (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Proverb
 He said that honesty is the best policy. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Proverb

In I.S. there is no change in the Tense, if the Rep. Sent. is a Proverb.

281. (4) He said that he intended to leave for Surat

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. S. Past Inf.(to) Prep. Ob.
 that night. (I.S.)

↓
 Ext. wd.
 "I intend to leave for Surat tonight,"
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro. S. Pr. Inf.(to) Prep. Ob. Ext. wd.
 he said. (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V.

282. (2) The teacher said to him, "Is poverty not a curse?" (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Aux. N. N.
 The teacher asked him if poverty was not a curse. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Conj. N. Aux. N.

283. (2) The prisoner enquired if a lawyer had been

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. N. Past
 arranged for him. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Per. (Passive) Prep. Pro.
 The prisoner asked, "Has a lawyer been arranged
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Q.wd. N.
 for me ?" (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Prep. Pro.

284. (2) Phila ordered her brother to turn down

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Prep. Phr.V.
 the television and let her work in peace. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Ob₂ Conj. Pro. V. Prepo₂ N.
 Phila said to her brother, "Turn down the television
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Phr.V. Ob₂
 and let me work in peace." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Conj. Pro. Prep₂ N.

285. (1) You will say, "I am ill." (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Pro. Aux. Adj.
 You will say that you are ill. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Aux. Adj.

286. (3) He bade his friends goodbye. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. exclamation

He said, "Goodbye, my friends." (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. exclamation Ob.

287. (3) He exclaimed with joy that their team had

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. N.
 won the tournament. (I.S.)
 ↓
 N.

had won — Past Per.
 He exclaimed, "Hurrah! Our team has won the
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Inter. Pro. N. Pr. Per.
 tournament." (D.S.)
 ↓
 N.

288. (4) His father said that it was time he visited

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro₁ Aux. Pro₂ V.
 his uncle. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Pro₃ N.
 "It is time you visited your uncle," said his father. (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro₁ Aux. Pro₂ V₁ Pro₃ N. Rep.V. Sub.

289. (4) The project manager asked Vivek how much time he would take to finish this project. (I.S.)

290. (2) The ox said to the dog, "Do not sit here." (D.S.)

291. (4) He said that he was writing a poem. (I.S.)

292. (3) He said that Asha had washed the clothes. (D.S.)

293. (2) Martha said that she was going to Mexico next year. (I.S.)

294. (1) My mother wished me a happy and prosperous life. (I.S.)

295. (2) You asked me why I was talking so much. (I.S.)

296. (1) Sandy said that she had already written a letter to her family. (I.S.)

297. (3) You said that they had been busy the whole day. (I.S.)

298. (4) I told her that I would have written letters. (I.S.)

299. (2) I asked him whether he would go to Agra the next day. (I.S.)

300. (2) I asked him, "Where will you stay?" (D.S.)

301. (3) He advised his son not to smoke. (I.S.)

302. (3) She said that she would then take rest for some time. (I.S.)

303. (4) The receptionist requested Umesh to be seated and to wait for his turn. (I.S.)

304. (1) He exclaimed, "What a graceful animal!" (D.S.)

305. (3) Caroline asked if I would come to her party on Saturday. (I.S.)

306. (4) Babu said that he had told his friends that I would be there. (I.S.)

307. (3) He told me that he would have been digging the ground for half an hour. (I.S.)

308. (4) Monica Cheng asked Roeun if he was going to visit Germany. (I.S.)

309. (3) You told me that you were going to America. (I.S.)

310. (2) You told me that she was your sister. (I.S.)

311. (2) The Professor asked if I had cleared my previous semester papers. (I.S.)

312. (1) The traffic constable ordered us to stop. (I.S.)

313. (2) Monikaviya said that she had gone for a long walk the day before. (I.S.)

314. (4) He confessed with regret that he had wasted his fortune. (I.S.)

315. (3) Mr. Ronald told us not to vote for Otis because he lacked responsibility. (I.S.)

316. (4) He said, "I had a wonderful dream

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Pro. Aux. N.

last night." (D.S.)

↓
Ext.wd.

He said, that he had a wonderful dream

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Aux. N.

the previous night. (I.S.)

↓
Ext.wd.

317. (2) He said, "I am buying

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Pro. Pr.Cont.

a new pen." (D.S.)

↓
N.

He said, that he was buying

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Past Cont.

a new pen. (I.S.)

↓
N.

318. (4) He bade his love goodbye. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Exc.

He said, "Goodbye, my love." (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Exc. N.

319. (1) "You did not return your book

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Pro₁ S. Past Pro₂ N.

yesterday," said the librarian. (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
Ext. wd. Rep.V. Sub.

The librarian said that he had not returned

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro₁ Past Per.

his book the previous day. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
Pro₂ N. Ext.wd.

320. (3) "You are all doing very well," said

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Pro₁ Pro₂ Adv. Adv. Rep.V.

Mr. Jones. (D.S.)

↓
Sub.

[are doing – Pr. Cont.]

Mr. Jones said that they were all doing

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro₁ Pro₂

very well. (I.S.)

↓
Adv.

[were doing – Past Cont.]

321. (2) "I finished it several days ago,"

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Pro₁ S.Past Pro₂ Det. N. Ext.wd.

said Jack. (D.S.)

↓ ↓
Rep.V. Sub.

Jack said that he had finished it

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro₁ Past Per. Pro₂

several days earlier. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
Det. N. Ext.wd.

322. (3) "I gave the packet to Tom, who

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Pro₁ S.Past N₁ Prep N₂ Pro₂

kept it a long time," said Pamela (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
S.Past Pro₃ N₃ Rep.V. Sub.

Pamela said that she had given

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro₁ Past Per.

the packet to Tom, who kept it

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
N₁ Prep. N₂ Pro₂ S.Past Pro₃

a long time. (I.S.)

↓
N₃

323. (2) "I was digging the garden when the doctor

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Pro. Past Cont. N₁ Adv. N₂

arrived, "replied Harry. (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
S.Past Rep.V. Sub.

Harry said that he had been digging

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Past Per. Cont.

the garden when the doctor arrived. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
N₁ Adv. N₂ S.Past

324. (4) I would have been surprised if you

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Pro₁ Ill conditional Conj₁ Pro₂

had passed the examination, "said
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Past Per. N. Rep.V.
 the former master. (D.S.)
 ↓
 Sub.
 The former master said that he
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj₂ Pro₁
 would have been surprised if I
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 III Conditional Conj₁ Pro₂
 had passed the examination. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Past Per. N.
 325. (3) "I will put this key here." said
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro. S.Fut. N. Ext.wd. Rep.V.
 the caretaker. (D.S.)
 ↓
 Sub.
 The caretaker said that he would put
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep. V. Conj. Pro. S.Fut.
 the key there. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 N. Ext.wd.
 326. (1) "I shall go tomorrow, "he said. (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro. S.Fut. Ext.wd. Sub. Rep.V.
 He said that he would go
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub Rep.V. Conj. Pro. S.Fut.
 the next day. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Ext.wd.
 327. (4) Walter said, "I cannot do it
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Pro₁ Mod. Inf. Pro₂
 now." (D.S.)
 ↓
 Ext.wd.
 Walter said that he could not do it
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro₁ Mod. Inf. Pro₂
 then. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Ext.wd.
 328. (2) The master said that he would see
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro₁ S.Fut.
 me the next day. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Pro₂ Ext. wd.

"I will see you tomorrow," said
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro₁ S.Fut. Pro₂ Ext.wd. Rep.V. Sub.
 the master. (D.S.)
 ↓
 Sub.
 329. (4) Father told Peter to clean his
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. To-Inf. Pro. N.
 shoes. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Sub.
 "Clean your shoes, Peter," said
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Inf. Pro. N₁ Ob. Rep.V.
 father. (D.S.)
 ↓
 Inf.
 330. (4) The girl said, "How happy I am!" (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Q.wd. Adj. Pro. Aux.
 The girl exclaimed that she was very
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Aux. Adv.
 happy. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Adj.
 331. (3) Mohan says that the teacher is not
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. N₁ Aux.
 at home. (I.S.)
 ↓
 N₂
 Mohan says, "The teacher is not
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. N₁ Aux.
 at home." (D.S.)
 ↓
 N₂
 When the Rep.V. is says, there is no change in the
 Tense of the Rep. Sent.
 332. (3) He said, "I have done my job." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Pro₁ Pr.Per. Pro₂ N.
 He said that he had done his job. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro₁ Past Per. Pro₂ N.
 333. (1) The student said, "I am doing my
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Pro₁ Pr.Cont. Pro₂
 home work." (D.S.)
 ↓
 N.

The student said that she was doing
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro₁ Past Cont.
 her homework. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Pro₂ N.
 334. (3) I said to the boy, "You have no ticket,
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Pro₁ Aux. N.
 get out before you are driven out. (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Inf. Adv₁ Pro₂ Pr. Adv₂
 I told the boy to get out before he
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. to-Inf. Adv₁ Pro₂
 was driven out as he had no ticket. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Past Adv₂ Conj. Pro₁ Aux. N.
 335. (4) Amelia is going to ask the principal
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob.
 for permission to go on a study tour. (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Prep₁ N₁ to-Inf. Prep₂ N₂
 Amelia is going to say to the principal,
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob.
 "May we have your permission to go
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Q.wd. Pro₁ Aux. Pro₂ N₁ to-Inf.
 on a study tour?"
 ↓ ↓
 Prep₂ N₂
 336. (2) Janet exclaimed that she had lost
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro₁ Past Per.
 all her belongings at the airport
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro₂ Pro₃ N₁ Prep. N₂
 that morning. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Ext.wd
 Janet said, "I lost all my belongings
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Pro₁ S.Past Pro₂ Pro₃ N₁
 at the airport this morning." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Prep. N₂ Ext.wd.
 337. (1) Thomas said that he would meet
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V₁ Conj₁ Pro₁ S.Fut.
 Andy the following Monday and asked
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 N₁ Ext.wd. Conj₂ Rep.V₂

if 1 O'Clock suited him. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Conj₃ N₂ S.Past Pro₂
 Thomas said to Andy, "I will meet you
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V₁ Ob. Pro₁ S.Fut. (Andy)
 the following Monday. Will 1 O'Clock suit
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Ext.wd. Q.wd. N₂ Inf.
 you?" (D.S.)
 ↓
 Pro₂
 338. (4) Sanda said that she used to know
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj₁ Pro₁ Past Mod. Inf.
 a lot of people in Delhi but that she
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Det. N₁ Prep₁ N₂ Conj₂ Conj₃ Pro₂
 had fewer friends in Kolkata. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Aux. Adj. N₃ Prep₂ N₄
 Sanda said, "I used to know a lot of
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Pro₁ Past Mod. Inf. Det.
 people in Delhi but I have fewer
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 N₁ Prep₁ N₂ Conj₂ Pro₂ Aux Adj.
 friends in Kolkata." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 N₃ Prep₂ N₄
 339. (1) Mary said, "I am sorry." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Pro. Aux. Exc.
 Mary said that she was sorry. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Aux Exc.
 340. (1) He said to me, "What are you doing?" (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Q.wd. Pro.
 [are doing — Pr. Cont.]
 He asked me what I was doing. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Q.wd. Pro. Past Cont.
 341. (3) The technician told us how to maintain
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V Ob. Adv. to-Inf.
 the machine in good working order. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 N₁ Prep. N₂
 The technician said, "This is how you
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V Pro₁ Aux. Adv. Pro₂
 maintain the machine in good working order." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Inf. N₁ Prep. N₂

342. (2) He said to me, "You need not worry." (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Pro. Mod. N.

He assured me that I need not worry. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Conj. Pro. Mod. N.

343. (4) Vikram said to Gopal, "What did the bear tell

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub Rep. V. Ob. Q.wd. Aux. N. S.Pr.

You in your ears?" (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
Pro₁ Prep. Pro₂ N.

Vikram asked Gopal what the bear told him

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Q.wd. N. S.Past Pro₁

in his ears. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
prep. Pro₂ N.

344. (3) Jane said to me, "Do you want to dance?" (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Aux. Pro. S.Pr. to-Inf.

Jane asked me if I wanted to dance. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Conj. Pro. S.Past to-Inf.

345. (4) "It's a cold day today!" cried the boy. (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Pro. Adj. N. Ext.wd. Rep.V. Sub.

Aux.

The boy exclaimed that it was cold

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
N. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Aux. Adj.

that day. (I.S.)

↓
Ext.wd.

346. (3) Could I have a cup of coffee, "she said. (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Mod. Pro. Aux. N. Sub. Rep.v.

She asked if she could have a cup of coffee.

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Mod. Aux. N.

(I.S.)

347. (1) "Do your duty, "the father told his son. (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Aux. Pro. N. Sub. Rep.V. Ob.

The father advised his son to do his duty. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. to-inf. Pro. N.

348. (1) "Have you finished your work, Ahmad?" asked

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Aux. Pro₁ S.Past Pro₂ N. Ob. Rep.

Vinod. (D.S.)

↓
Sub.

Vinod asked Ahmad whether he had finished his

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Conj. Pro₁ Past Per. Pro₂

work. (I.S.)

↓
N.

349. (3)

Jennifer said, "What will you do when you leave

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.v. Q.wd. Mod. Pro₁ Inf. Conj. Pro₂ Inf.

School? (D.S.)

↓
N.

Jennifer asked her what she would do when she

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Q.wd. Pro₁ Mod. Inf. Conj. Pro₂

leaves school. (I.S.)

↓ ↓
Inf. N.

350. (4)

"Please be patient and the letter will come, "said

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Exc. Aux. N₁ Conj. N₂ S. Fut. Rep.v.

the teacher to the student. (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Prep. Ob.

The teacher advised the student to be patient

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. (to) Aux. N₁
Inf.

and wait for the letter. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Conj. Inf. Prep. N₂

351. (1)

"Which way is the post office?" the lady asked.(D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Q.wd. N. S.Pr. N. Sub. Rep.V.

The lady asked the way to the post office. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. N. Prep. N.

352. (3) "Are you the manager?" I said. (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Aux. Pro. N. Sub. Rep.V.

I asked him whether he was the manager. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Conj. Pro. Aux. N.

353. (4)

She shouted, "I am going home." (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Pro. Pr. Cont. N.

She shouted to them that she was going

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Prep. Ob. Conj. Pro. Past Cont.

home. (I.S.)
 ↓
 N.
 354. (1) Sucheta said, "Could you please write the project
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Mod. Pro₁ Exc. Inf. N.
 for me, Shweta?" (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Prep. Pro₂ Ob.
 Sucheta requested Shweta to write the project for
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. to-Inf. N. Prep.
 her. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Pro₂
 355. (4) Reena said to Ramesh, "I'll meet you and
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Pro₁ S.Fut. Pro₂ Conj₁
 Mohan in the restaurant." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 N₁ Prep. N₂
 Reena told Ramesh that she would meet him
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Conj₂ Pro₁ S. Fut. Pro₂
 and Mohan in the restaurant. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Conj₁ N₁ Prep. N₂
 356. (1) He said to his friends, "Let us play some
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj. V. Pro₁ Inf. Det.
 Country-music and dance. (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 N. Conj. Inf.
 He suggested to his friends that they should play
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj. Conj. Pro. Mod. Inf.
 some country-music and dance. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Def. N. Conj. Inf.
 357. (4) The minister announced that a new
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep. V. Conj.
 employment scheme would be implemented
 ↓ ↓
 N. S. Fut. (Passive)
 from the following month. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Prep. Ext. wd.
 The minister said, "A new employment scheme
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. N.
 will be implemented from next month
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 S. Fut. (Passive) Prep. Ext. wd.

onwards." (D.S.)
 ↓
 Adv.
 358. (4) Mike said, "Don't fly via Paris." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Inf. N.
 Mike advised me not to fly via Paris. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj. Inf. N.
 [In Imperative, Indirect Speech, don't changes into
 not to]
 359. (2) Mr. Pradhan said, "I shall go to
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Pro. S.Fut. Prep.
 Delhi tomorrow." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 N. Ext. wd.
 Mr. Pradhan said that he would go to Delhi
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. S.Fut. Prep. N.
 the next day. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Ext. wd.
 360. (3) "Saint George, strike for us," exclaimed
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Obj. Inf. Prep. Pro. Rep.V.
 the Knight (D.S.)
 ↓
 Sub.
 The Knight prayed that Saint George
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Ob.
 might strike for them. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Mod. Inf. Prep. Pro.
 361. (4) The headmaster said to the student, "You
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj. Pro.
 are expelled for attempting to
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pr. Per. Prep₁ Pr. Cont. Prep₂
 copy in the examination." (D.S.)
 ↓
 N.
 The headmaster said to the student that
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj. Conj.
 he was expelled for attempting to
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro. Past Per. Prep. Pr. Cont. Prep₂
 copy in the examination. (I.S.)
 ↓
 N.

anything dangerous. (I.S.)

↓ ↓

Pro. N.

[In Imp. I.S., don't changes into not to]

366. (4) "I usually take my dog out for a walk when

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Pro₁ Adv.₁ Inf. N₁ Adv.₂ Prep₁ N₂ Conj₂

I come home from work." he said. (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Pro₂ Inf. N₃ Prep₂ N₄ Sub. Rep.V.

He said that he usually took his dog

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Sub. Rep.V. Conj₁ Pro₁ Adv₁ S.Past N₁

out for a walk when he came

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Adv₂ Prep₁ N₂ Conj₂ Pro₂ S. Past

home from work. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓

N₃ Prep₂ N₄

367. (4)

"Do you know the way to the bus-station?"

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Aux. Pro₁ Inf. N₁ N₂

Ram said to Mahim. (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓

Sub. Rep.V. Ob.

Ram asked Mahim if he knew

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Conj. Pro. S.Past

the way to the bus-station. (I.S.)

↓ ↓

N₁ N₂

368. (1) "Are your examinations over?"

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Aux. Pro. N. Adj.

asked the teacher. (D.S.)

↓ ↓

Rep.V. Sub.

The teacher asked whether his

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro.

examinations were over. (I.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓

N. Aux. Adv.

369. (4) Next morning at breakfast Ramesh's wife

↓

Sub.

said to him, "Ramesh, "I think I can tell

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Rep.V. Ob₁ Ob₂ Pro₁ Inf. Pro₂ Mod. Inf.

what is a miss with our clock." (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

Q.wd. Aux. Adj. Prep. Pro₂ N.

Next morning at breakfast Ramesh's wife addressed
 ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V₁
 him by name and told him that she
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Ob₁ Conj. Rep.V₂ Ob₂ Conj₁ Pro₁
 thought she could tell what was a miss
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 S. Past Pro₂ Mod. Inf. Q.wd. Aux. Adj.
 with their clock. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Prep. Pro₃ N.
 370. (3) The teacher said to him, "Do not go
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep. V. Ob. Aux. S.Pr.
 out," (D.S.)
 ↓
 Adv.
 The teacher advised him not to go out. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep. V. Ob. S.Pr. Adv.
 [In Imperative, Negative Sentences do not is removed and
 not to is used in I.S.]
 371. (3)
 Rajiv said to me, "He plays with right hand,"
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Pro. S. Pr. Prep. Ob₂
 (D.S.)
 Rajiv told me that he plays with
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Conj. Pro. S. Pr. Prep.
 right hand. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Ob₂
 When it is a habitual action, the Tense of the V. remains
 unchanged
 372. (4) "Sam, will you help me carry my
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Ob₁ Modal Pro₁ S.Pr. Pro₂ S.Pr. Pro₃
 bags ? " asked the old woman. (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Ob₂ Rep. V. Sub.
 The old woman asked Sam whether he would
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Conj. Pro₁ Modal
 help her carry her bags. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 S.Pr. Pro₂ S. Pr. Pro₃ Ob₂
 To change questions (which can be answered in yes/no)
 into I.S., if/whether (Conj.) is used
 373. (4) My father said to me, "Will you sit and
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Modal Pro S.Pr. Conj.
 study at least now." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 S.Pr. Id. Ext. wd.

My father asked me if I would
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Conj₁ Pro. Modal
 sit and study at least then. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 S.Pr. Conj₂ S.Pr. Id. Ext.wd.
 374. (4) I said to my mother, "Please warm
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Exc. S. Pr.
 this milk. Don't boil it. " (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Dem. Adj. N. Aux. S.Pr. Pro₁
 I requested my mother to warm that
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Inf. (to) S.Pr. Dem. Adj.
 milk and asked her not to boil it. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 N Conj. Pro₂ S.Pr. Pro₁
 In order to change an Imp. Sent. into I.S., a to-inf. is
 used ; not to replaces don't
 375. (4) The boy thanked the principal for granting him
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Pr. Cont. Pro.
 a fee concession. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Ob₂
 The boy said to the principal, "Thank you,
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Inter.
 madam for granting me a fee concession. " (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 N. Pr. Cont. Pro. Ob₂
 376. (3) "They are late," she has already told
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro. S.Pr. Ob₁ Sub. Pr. Per. Rep.V.
 us. (D.S.)
 ↓
 Ob₂
 She has already told us that they are
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Pr. Per. Rep.V. Ob₂ Conj. Pro. S.Pr.
 late. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Ob₁
 Use of that is optional.
 377. (1) I'll say to my friends, "I have started
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Pro. Pr. Per. Cont.
 learning Computer. " (D.S.)
 ↓
 Ob₂
 I'll tell my friends that I have started
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Conj. Pro. Pr. Per. Cont.

- learning computer." (I.S.)
 ↓
 Ob₂
 378. (2) He said to me, "where are you
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Q.wd. Pro.
 going ?" (D.S.)
 are going → Pr. Cont.
 He asked me where I was going.
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Q.wd. Pro. Past Cont.
 (I.S.)
 The Indirect Narration is always in the Assertive form
 379. (1) The teacher said to his student, "Do you
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Aux₁ Pro.
 have any excuse for coming late to
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Aux₂ Det. N. Prep. Pr. Cont. Adv. Prep.
 school, today ?
 ↓ ↓
 Ob₂ Ext. wd.
 The teacher asked his student if he
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob₁ Pro.
 had any excuse for coming late to
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Aux₂ Det. N. Prep. Pr. Cont. Adv. Prep.
 School, that day. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Ob₂ Ext. wd.
 380. (2) The commander said, "Let the gates be
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. V. N. Aux.
 left open." (D.S.)
 ↓
 S.Past
 The commander ordered for the gates to be
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. N. Aux.
 left open. (I.S.)
 ↓
 S.Past
 Rep. Sp. starting with let is changed by using for and
 to (Inf. mood)
 381. (1) Vipul said, "Alas ! How thoughtless I
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Inter. Q.wd. Adj. Pro.
 have been !" (D.S.)
 ↓
 Pr. Per.
 Vipul confessed with regret that he
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro.

- had been thoughtless. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Past Per. Adj.
 382. (2) The officer said, "Cowards! you shall
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Inter. Pro. Mod.
 soon be put to death." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Adv. Aux. S.Pr. Prep. N.
 The officer called them cowards and
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. N. Conj.
 said that they would soon be put
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Mod. Adv. Aux. S.Pr.
 to death. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Prep. N.
 383. (2) The teacher said, "Don't come to school
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Aux. S.Pr. Prep. N.
 on Monday because it is a holiday,
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Prep. N. Conj. Pro. Aux. N.
 "(D.S.)
 The teacher told us not to come to school
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. S.Pr. Prep. N.
 on Monday because it is a holiday. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Prep. N. Conj. Pro. Aux. N.
 don't changes to not to in I.S.
 384. (2) Rahul said, "Yes I am mistaken,"
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Exc. Pro. Aux. Adj.
 (D.S.)
 Rahul admitted that he was mistaken,
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Aux. Adj.
 (I.S.)
 385. (3) He asked me if I would like
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Conj. Pro₁ S.Fut.
 to have lunch with me that day. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Prep. Aux. N. Prep. Pro₂ Ext.wd.
 He said to me, "Would you like to
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Mod. Pro₁ Inf. Prep.
 have lunch with me today." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Aux. N. Prep. Pro₂ Ext.wd.
 386. (1) I said, "Goodbye, my beloved friends."
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Exc. Pro. Adj. N.

- (D.S.)
I bade my beloved friends. (I.S.)
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Pro. Adj. N.
bid (V.) : to say good morning, goodbye, etc. to somebody
bid (Present)– bade (Past)– bidden (Past Participle)
387. (4) The teacher said to me, "I hope you
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Pro₁ Pro₂
will bring credit to my school. (D.S.)
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
S.Fut. N. Prep. Pro₃ N.
The teacher hoped that I would bring
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro₁ S. Fut.
credit to his school. (I.S.)
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
N. Prep. Pro₂ N.
388. (4) They said, "We were living in Paris." (D.S.)
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Pro. Past Cont. Prep. N.
(D.S.)
They told that they had been living in
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Past Per. Cont. Prep.
Paris. (I.S.)
↓
N.
389. (1) He said to his father, "Shall I go to
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Mod. Pro. Inf. Prep.
market now?" (D.S.)
↓ ↓
N. Ext. wd.
He asked his father if he should go
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Conj. Pro. Mod. Inf.
to market then. (I.S.)
↓ ↓ ↓
Prep. N. Ext.wd.
390. (2) I said to my friend, "Can I borrow
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Mod. Pro₁ Inf.
your dictionary for one day only?" (D.S.)
↓ ↓ ↓
Pro₂ N. Prep.
I asked my friend if I could borrow
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Conj. Pro₁ Mod. Inf.
his dictionary for one day only. (I.S.)
↓ ↓ ↓
Pro₂ N. Prep.

391. (2) The guide said to the swimmer, "Don't
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Aux.
swim out too far." (D.S.)
The guide forbade the swimmer from swimming
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Gerund
out too far. (I.S.)
forbade (V.) : to order somebody not to do something
don't is replaced by not to in I.S.
forbade has a negative meaning. So, another negative
will not be used with it.
392. (4) Dr. Ratan said to the patient, "Take
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. S.Pr.
light food and do not go out in the sun." (D.S.)
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
N. Conj. Inf. Adv. Prep.
Dr. Ratan advised the patient to take light food
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. S.Pr. N.
and not to go out in the sun. (I.S.)
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Conj. Inf. Adv. Prep.
do not is replaced by not to in I.S.
393. (4) "There is no need for you to be so
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Adv₁ Aux₁ N. Pro. Aux₂ Adv₂
angry," said Mrs. Sen to her husband. (D.S.)
↓ ↓ ↓
Adj. Sub. Ob.
said to → Rep. V.
Mrs. Sen told her husband that there
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Conj. Adv₁
was no need for him to be so angry. (I.S.)
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Aux₁ N. Pro. Aux₂ Adv₂ Adj.
394. (1) "What an excellent piece of art!" she said. (D.S.)
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Q.wd. Adj. N. Sub. Rep.V.
She exclaimed with appreciation that it
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro.
was an excellent piece of art.
↓ ↓ ↓
Aux. Adj. N.
395. (1) "Oh! how foolish I have been in
↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
Inter. Q.wd. Adj. Pro. Pr.Per. Prep.
matters!" (D.S.)
↓
N.

- He confessed regretfully that he had been
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Conj. Pro. Past Per.
 very foolish in matters. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Adv. Adj. Prep. N.
- When how is followed by an Adj., very (Adv.) is used
396. (1) He wished me respectfully and told that
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Ob. Conj.
 he had come to join the office. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro. Past Per. Prep. Inf. N.
 wished respectfully and told → Rep. V.
 He said to me, "Good morning, Sir! I
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Exc. N. Pro.
 have come to join the office." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pr. Per. Prep. Inf. N.
397. (3) My brother said to me, "I shall buy you a notepad tomorrow." (D.S.)
398. (2) The peon requested his officer to forgive him. (I.S.)
399. (2) The teacher said that the Earth moves round the sun. (I.S.)
- It is a Universal Truth. Its Tense does not change in Indirect Speech.
400. (2) Ashok told me that my parents were waiting for me. (I.S.)
401. (2) The Policeman asked the driver whether he had a licence. (I.S.)
402. (4) The teacher instructed the students to march quietly to the ground. (I.S.)
403. (4) The men said that they were going to fly kites. (I.S.)
404. (1) Kumar says that it doesn't rain in January. (I.S.)
 Reporting Verb is in Present Tense. Hence, Tense of Reported Speech will not change.
405. (3) Meera's mother reminded her, "Don't forget to buy the milk." (D.S.)
406. (2) I asked him if he definitely needed the suit the following week. (I.S.)
407. (3) Ravi asked me if I had seen the Taj Mahal. (I.S.)
408. (2) Robin exclaimed joyfully that he had topped again. (I.S.)
409. (4) He said that he had been studying in that college for two years (I.S.)
410. (3) Mary told Simon that Sharon and Peter were getting engaged next month (I.S.)
411. (4) I asked my friend if he could pick me up after work. (I.S.)
412. (3) Suman asked me if I had enjoyed the Olympic Games in London. (I.S.)
413. (1) My friend told me that was not a good book to read. (I.S.)

414. (4) Dhanya complained that she was losing weight steadily (I.S.)
415. (3) My mother said that I had been sleeping for twelve hours (I.S.)
416. (2) Rajan told Urvashi that was going to Kashmir the next day. (I.S.)
417. (1) She asked me if I had finished my work (I.S.)
418. (2) He asked her to turn around (I.S.)
419. (4) He said, "I
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Pro.
 have been studying in this
 ↓ ↓
 Pr. Per. Cont. Ext.wd.
 for two years." (D.S.)
 He said that he
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Connective Pro.
 had been studying in that
 ↓ ↓
 Past Per. Cont. ext.wd.
 college for two years. (I.S.)
420. (3) Mary said to Simon,
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj.
 "Sharon and Peter
 ↓
 Sub.
 are getting engaged next
 ↓ ↓
 Pr. Cont. Ext.wd.
 month." (D.S.)
 Mary told Simon that
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj.
 Sharon and Peter
 ↓
 Sub.
 were getting engaged
 ↓
 Past Cont.
 the following month. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Ext. wd.
421. (4) I said to my friend,
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj.
 "Can you pick me
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Mod.wd. Pro.₁ Pro.₂
 up after work?" (D.S.) (Int. Sent.)

- I asked my friend if
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj. Connective
 he could pick me
 ↓ ↓
 Pro.₁ Pro.₂
 up after work. (I.S.) (Asser. Sent.)
422. (3) Suman said to me,
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj.
 "Did you enjoy the olympic
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Q.wd. Pro. S.Past
 Games in London?" (D.S.) (Int. Sent.)
 Suman asked me
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj.
 if I had enjoyed
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Connective Pro Past Per.
 the Olympic Games in London. (I.S.) (Asser. Sent.)
423. (1) My friend told me,
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj.
 "This is not a good book
 ↓ ↓
 Pro. Aux. V.
 S. Pr.
 to read." (D.S.)
 My friend told me
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj.
 that that was
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Connective Pro Aux. V.
 S. Past
 not a good book to read. (I.S.)
424. (4) Dhanya complained,
 ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V.
 "I am losing weight
 ↓ ↓
 Pro. Pr. Cont.
 steadily." (D.S.)
 Dhanya complained
 ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V.
 that she was losing
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Connective Pro Past Cont.
 weight steadily. (I.S.)

425. (3) My mother said,
 ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V.
 "You have been sleeping
 ↓ ↓
 Pro. Pr. Per. Cont.
 for twelve hours." (D.S.)
 My mother said
 ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V.
 that I
 ↓ ↓
 Connective Pro.
 had been sleeping
 ↓
 Past per. Cont.
 for twelve hours. (I.S.)
 You changes according to the Object.
 Here, me is the Object.
426. (2) Rajan told Urvashi,
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj.
 "I'm going to Kashmir
 ↓ ↓
 Pro. Pr. Cont.
 tomorrow." (D.S.)
 ↓
 Ext.wd.
 Rajan told Urvashi
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj.
 that he was going
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Connective Pro. Past Cont.
 to Kashmir the next day.
 ↓
 Ext. wd.
 (I.S.)
 I changes according to the Subject.
427. (1) She said to me,
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj.
 "Have you finished your
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pr.Per. Pro.₁ Pr.Per. Pro.₂
 work." (D.S.) (Int. Sent.)
 She asked me
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj.
 if I had finished
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Connective Pro.₁ Past Per.

my work. (I.S.) (Asser. Sent.)
 ↓
 Pro.₂
 428. (2) "Turn around,
 ↓
 S. Pr.
 "he told her.
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj.
 (D.S.) (Imp. Sent.)
 He asked her
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj.
 to turn around. (I.S.)
 ↓
 to-Inf.
 429. (1) I asked him
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj.
 whether he
 ↓ ↓
 Connective Pro.
 had not promised
 ↓
 Past Per. T.
 to come. (I.S.).
 I said to him,
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj.
 "Did you not promise
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Q.wd. Pro. S. Past
 to come ?" (D.S.)
 430. (1) Rahul said, "what
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Q.wd.
 have you been searching
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Aux.V. Pro. Pr. Per. Cont.
 all these hours ?" (D.S.)
 ↓
 Ext.wd.
 Rahul asked me what
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj. Q.wd.
 I had been searching
 ↓
 Pro. Past. Per. Cont.
 all those hours. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Ext.wd.

431. (1) He said to the children,
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj.
 "Come to the Park with
 ↓
 S. Pr.
 me." (D.S.)
 ↓
 Pro.
 He invited the children
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj.
 to come to the park with
 ↓
 to-inf.
 him. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Pro.
 432. (1) "I love chocolate,
 ↓ ↓
 Pro. S.Pr.
 said Angeline. (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Rep.V. Sub.
 Angeline said that
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Connective
 she loved chocolate. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Pro. S.Past
 433. (2) "Do you know
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Aux.V. Pro. S.Pr.
 that man?"
 Ravi asked his friend. (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj.
 Ravi asked his friend
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Obj.
 whether he knew
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Connective Pro. S.Past
 that man. (I.S.)
 434. (2) The teacher said,
 ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V.
 "Be quiet and listen
 ↓ ↓
 Aux.V. S.Pr.

to my words." (D.S.)

↓

Pro.

The teacher asked

↓

↓

Sub.

Rep.V.

the students to be quiet

↓

↓

Obj.

to-inf

quiet and listen to her

↓

Pro.

words. (I.S.)

[to is used to join the two sentences in imperative]

435. (4) He said that

↓

↓

↓

Sub.

Rep.V.

Connective

the book was very

↓

Aux. V.

interesting. (I.S.)

He said, "This book is

↓

↓

↓

Sub. Rep.V.

S.Pr.

very interesting." (D.S.)

436. (2) She said to him,

↓

↓

↓

Sub.

Rep.V.

Obj.

"I have bought

↓

↓

Pro. Pr.Per.

a new car." (D.S.)

She told him

↓

↓

↓

Sub. Rep.V.

Obj.

that he had bought

↓

↓

↓

Connective

Pro.

Past Per.

a new car. (I.S.)

437. (2) He said to me,

↓

↓

↓

Sub.

Rep.V.

Obj.

"You are late." (D.S.)

↓

↓

Pro. Aux.V.

He told me that

↓

↓

↓

↓

Sub. Rep.V.

Obj.

Connective

I was late. (I.S.)

↓

↓

Pro. S. Past

438. (1) I told him

↓

↓

↓

Sub.

Rep.V.

Obj.

that

he

↓

↓

Connective

Pro.

was wrong. (I.S.)

439. (2) He said, "She

↓

↓

↓

Sub.

Rep. V.

Pro.

is coming this year." (D.S.)

↓

↓

Pr. Cont.

Ext. wd.

He

said

that

↓

↓

↓

Sub. Rep. V.

Connective

She

was coming

that

↓

↓

↓

Pro.

Past Cont.

Ext. wd.

year. (I.S.)

440. (3) My mother says

↓

↓

Sub.

Rep. V.

that

she

has often

↓

↓

↓

Connective

Pro.₁

Pr. Per.

told

me not to play with

↓

↓

Pr. Per. Pro.₂

fire. (I.S.)

My mother says, "I

↓

↓

↓

Sub.

Rep. V.

Pro.₁

have often

told

you

↓

↓

↓

Pr. Per.

Pr. Per.

Pro.₂

not to play with fire." (D.S.)

441. (4) The teacher asked

↓

↓

Sub.

Rep. V.

the student why he

↓

↓

↓

Obj.

Q.wd.

Pro.

had been absent

↓

Past Per. Cont.

the previous day. (I.S.)

↓

Ext. wd.

The teacher

said to

↓

↓

Sub.

Rep. V.

the student, "why were
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Ob. Q. wd. S. Past
 you absent yesterday ?" (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Pro. Ext. wd.
 442. (2) My sister said
 ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep. V.
 that they would contact
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Connective Pro.₁ S. Future
 me as soon as they finish the
 ↓ ↓
 Pro.₂ Pro.₃
 job. (I.S.)
 My sister said, "They
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep. V. Pro.₁
 will contact you as soon as
 ↓ ↓
 S. Future Pro.₂
 they finish the job. (D.S.)
 ↓
 Pro.₃

443. (2) Sheela told me she
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep. V. Ob. Pro.
 that could come
 ↓ ↓
 Connective S. Past
 that night. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Ext. wd.
 Sheela reassured me, "I
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Pro.
 can come tonight." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 S.Pr. Ext. wd.

444. (2) I told you that
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Connective
 I could not be blamed
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro. S. Past S. Past
 for that.
 ↓
 Ext. wd.
 I said to you, "I
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Pro.

cannot be blamed for
 ↓ ↓
 S. Present S. Present
 that.
 ↓
 Ext. wd.
 445. (4) The father asked the son
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob.
 why he did not start
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Q. wd. Pro. S. Past
 preparing for the examination
 that month. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Ext. wd.
 The father said to the son,
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob.
 "why do you not start
 ↓ ↓
 Q. wd. S. Pr.
 preparing for the examination this month." ? (D.S.)
 ↓

Ext. wd.
 446. (3) He asked how a Zebra
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Q. wd. Ob.
 could talk. (I.S.)
 ↓
 S. Past
 He said, "How can
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Q. wd. S. Pr.
 a Zebra talk ?" (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Ob. S. Pr.

447. (2) My mother asked me
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob.
 what I had eaten
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Q. wd. Pro. Past Per.
 the previous night. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Ext. wd.
 "What did you eat
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Q. wd. S. Past Pro. S. Past
 last night ?" asked
 ↓ ↓
 Ext. wd. Rep. V.

my mother. (D.S.)
 ↓
 Sub.
 448. (3) "Which chair am I
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Q.wd S. Pr. Pro.
 to sit on ?" asks he. (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 S. Pr. Rep. V. Sub.
 He asks which chair he
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Q.wd. Pro.
 is to sit on. (I.S.)
 ↓
 S. Pr.
 when the Rep. V. is in S. Pre., the Tense in the Rep.
 Sp. does not change.

449. (4) The boss requested
 ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep. V.
 for the latest reports. (I.S.)
 The boss said, "Please give me
 ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V.
 the latest reports." (D.S.)
 In order to change an Imperative Sent. into a to-Inf.
 or any other Prep. is used.
 This sentence can be changed as follows also :
 I The boss requested me to give him the latest reports.

450. (3) They suggested me
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob.
 to take those books
 ↓ ↓
 to-Inf. Ext.wd.
 upstairs. (I.S.)
 They said to me, "Bring
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ob. Inf.
 these books upstairs." (D.S.)
 ↓
 Ext. wd.
 451. (1) She said that
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Connective
 she had been in that
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro. Past Per. Ext. wd.
 school since 1998. (I.S.)
 She said, "I've been in
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Pro. Pr. Per.

this school since 1998. (D.S.)
 ↓
 Ext. wd.
 452. (1) I asked the stranger
 ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V.
 if he was
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Connective Pro.₁ S. Past
 the same person I
 ↓
 Pro.₂
 had met in the park. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Past Per.
 "Are you the same person
 ↓ ↓
 S. Pr. pro.₁
 I met in the park ?"
 ↓ ↓
 Pro.₂ S. Past
 I asked. (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep. V.
 453. (3) He said, "Alas! I
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V. Ext.wd. Pro.₁
 am perished by the people
 ↓
 S. Pr.
 I have made" (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Pro.₂ Pr. Per.
 He exclaimed with regret
 ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep. V.
 that he was perished
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Connective Pro.₁ Past Per.
 by the people he
 ↓
 Pro.₂
 had made. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Past Per.
 454. (2) The matron informed
 ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V.
 the girls that she
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Ob. Connective Pro.₁

always kept a tin of biscuits
 ↓
 S. Past
 in her room. (I.S.)
 ↓
 Pro.₂
 "I always keep a tin of
 ↓ ↓
 Pro.₁ S. Pr.
 biscuits in my room,
 ↓
 Pro.₂
 girls." (D.S.)
 ↓
 Ob.
 455. (4) The mother advised
 ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V.
 the children not to step
 ↓ ↓
 Ob. to-Inf.
 out of the house in the summer season. (I.S.)
 Mother said, "Don't step
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep. V. Inf.
 out of the house in the summer season." (D.S.)
 In Imp. Sent. don't (D.S.) changes to not to (I.S.)
 456. (1) The teacher said,
 ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep.V.
 "The burglar had broken
 ↓
 Past Per.
 into the office." (D.S.)
 The teacher said
 ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep. V.
 that the burglar had broken
 ↓ ↓
 Connective Past Per.
 into the office. (I.S.)
 457. (3) "Ajay, I will return
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Ob. Pro.₁ S.Fut.
 the book to you tomorrow,"
 ↓ ↓
 Pro.₂ Ext. wd.
 said Salim. (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Rep. V. Sub.

Salim told Ajay
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep. V. Ob.
 that he would return
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Connective Pro.₁ S. Fut.
 the book to him the next day. (I.S.)
 458. (1) He said that
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep. V. Connective
 he couldn't stand on
 ↓ ↓
 Pro.₁ S. Past
 his head because he was
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro.₂ Pro.₃ S. Past
 not well. (I.S.)
 "I can't stand on my
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro.₁ S. Pr. Pro.₂
 head because I am
 ↓ ↓
 Pro.₃ S. Pr.
 not well." (D.S.)
 459. (3) He said, "when I
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep. V. Pro.₁
 was a boy I could stay up
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 S. Past Pro.₂ S. Past
 as long as I liked." (D.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Pro.₃ S. Past
 He said that when
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep. V. Connective
 he was a boy he
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 Pro.₁ S. Past Pro.₁
 was a boy he could stay
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 S. Past Pro.₂ S. Past
 as long as he liked. (I.S.)
 ↓ ↓
 Pro.₃ S. Past
 460. (2) "I know the place well
 ↓ ↓
 Pro.₁ S. Pr.
 because I used to live here,"
 ↓ ↓
 Pro.₂ Ext. wd.

he explained. (D.S.)

↓ ↓

Sub. Rep. V.

He explained that

↓ ↓ ↓

Sub. Rep. V. Connective

he knew the place well

↓ ↓

Pro.₁ S. Past

because he used to live

↓

Pro.₂

there. (I.S.)

↓

Ext. wd.

461. (4) She said that

↓ ↓ ↓

Sub. Rep. V. Connective

they had been thinking

↓ ↓

Pro. Past Per. cont.

of selling the house but

had decided not to. (I.S.)

↓

Past Per.

She said, " we

↓ ↓ ↓

Sub. Rep. V. Pro.

were thinking of selling the

↓ ↓

Pro. Past Cont.

house but we had decided

↓

Past Per.

not to." (D.S.)

462. (1) The guide suggested

↓ ↓

Sub. Rep. V.

that we should

↓ ↓ ↓

Connective Pro. Mod. V.

rest there for a while. (I.S.)

↓

Ext. wd.

The guide suggested,

↓ ↓

Sub. Rep. V.

"Let's rest here for a

↓ ↓

let us Ext. wd.

↓ ↓

Inf. Pro.

while." (D.S.)

In such sentences Let is replaced by should. Should is used after the Pro..

That is used to join both the parts of the sentence.

463. (3) Bidding his dear friend

↓

Ob.

good-bye, the patriot said

↓ ↓

Sub. Rep. V.

that they would meet

↓ ↓ ↓

Connective Pro. S. Fut.

again. (I.S.)

"Good-bye! Dear friend,"

↓

Ob.

said the patriot, "we

↓ ↓ ↓

Rep. V. Sub. Pro.

will meet again." (D.S.)

↓

S. Fut.

when good bye is used in Reported Sp., then said (D.S.) is replaced with bade (I.S.)

464. (1) "I am starting

↓ ↓

Pro. Pr. Cont.

the day after tomorrow,

mother, "he said. (D.S.)

↓ ↓ ↓

Ob. Sub. Rep. V.

He told his mother

↓ ↓ ↓

Sub. Rep. V. Ob.

that he was starting

↓ ↓ ↓

Connective Pro. Past Cont.

in two days' time. (I.S.)

465. (4) He told me

↓ ↓ ↓

Sub. Rep. V. Ob.

that my train would leave

↓ ↓ ↓

Connective Pro.₁ S. Fut.

if you did not go

↓ ↓

Pro.₂ S. Past

that moment. (I.S.)

↓

Ext. wd.

He told me, "Your train
 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓
 Sub. Rep. V. Ob. Pro.₁
 will leave if you do
 ↓ ↓ ↓
 S. Fut. Pro.₂ S. Pr.
 not go at once." (D.S.)
 ↓

Ext. wd.

466. (4) Rakesh asks Sunita if she can prepare a cup of tea for him. (Indirect)
 says ⇒ asks
 if ⇒ Conj.
 you ⇒ she
 me ⇒ him
467. (2) The Prime Minister said at a meeting that there was no need of a working President then. (Indirect)
 that ⇒ Conj.
 is (S. Pre.) ⇒ was (S. Past)
 now ⇒ then
468. (2) He urged them to be quiet and listen to his words. (Indirect)
 said ⇒ urged
 be quiet ⇒ to be quiet
 my ⇒ his
 An Imp. Sent. is changed into Indirect Speech by using a to-Inf.
469. (4) Anil said that Ali had deserved the prize. (Indirect)
 that ⇒ Conj.
 deserved (S. Past) ⇒ had deserved (Past Per.)
470. (4) He prayed that God might bless me. (Indirect)
 said to ⇒ prayed
 that ⇒ Conj.
 may ⇒ might
 you ⇒ me
471. (1) I cautioned the old man against sitting on that chair as it was broken. (Indirect)
 said to ⇒ cautioned
 don't sit ⇒ against sitting
 is (S. Pr.) ⇒ was (S. Past)
 don't can also be replaced by not to
472. (3) He observed that he was a strange man. (Indirect)
 said ⇒ observed
 that ⇒ Conj.
473. (4) he said that he was coming the next day. (Indirect)
 that ⇒ Conj.
 I ⇒ he
 am (S. Pr.) ⇒ was (S. Past)
 tomorrow ⇒ the next day
474. (3) He says that the sun rises in the east. (Indirect)
 that ⇒ Conj.
 when the Rep. V. is in S. Pr., the Tense in the Rep. Sp. will remain unchanged.

- If the Rep. Sp. is a Universal Truth/Habitual Action, the Tense in the Rep. Sp. remains unchanged.
475. (2) He exclaimed hopefully that they would come. (Indirect)
 said (wish) ⇒ exclaimed hopefully
 that ⇒ Conj.
476. (1) The teacher told the children that the Sun always sets in the west. (Indirect)
 said to ⇒ told
477. (4) The stranger asked the boy if he could tell him the way to Raj Bhawan. (Indirect)
 said to ⇒ asked
 you ⇒ he
 if ⇒ Conj.
 me ⇒ him
 can ⇒ could
478. (1) The teacher enquired from the students whether the guide had conducted them right upto the top. (Indirect)
 asked ⇒ enquired
 whether ⇒ Conj.
 bring (S. Pr.) ⇒ had conducted (brought) (Past Per.)
 you ⇒ them
479. (4) The boy swore that he had not cheated. (Indirect)
 said (By God) ⇒ swore
 that ⇒ Conj.
 I ⇒ he
 have not cheated (Pr. Per.) ⇒ had not cheated (Past Per.)
480. (3) Mrs. Lal advised Nina to see a doctor. (Indirect)
 said ⇒ advised
 Imp. mood is changed into Inf. mood in Indirect Speech by using to
481. (2) She said that her sister had been there ten days before but she was not there then. (Indirect)
 that ⇒ Conj.
 was (S. Past) ⇒ had been (Past Per.)
 here ⇒ there
 ago ⇒ before
 now ⇒ then
482. (1) He said that he would go however hard it might rain. (Indirect)
 that ⇒ Conj.
 let it rain ⇒ it might rain
 ever so ⇒ however
 I ⇒ he
 shall ⇒ would
483. (4) The little boy enquired of him who he was and where he had come from. (Indirect)
 said - to him ⇒ enquired of him
 are ⇒ was
 you ⇒ he
 have - come (Pr. Per.) ⇒ had come (Past Per.)

484. (4) The teacher told his students that health is wealth whatever they might say. (Indirect)
said to ⇒ told
that ⇒ Conj.
when it is a Universal Truth, the Tense in the Rep. Sp. remains unchanged.
485. (2) The child exclaimed that it was a beautiful sight. (Indirect)
said ⇒ exclaimed
that ⇒ Conj.
Exclamatory Sent. ⇒ Statement
486. (4) Mohan will say that he wants two persons to assist him. (Indirect)
that ⇒ Conj.
I ⇒ he
want ⇒ wants
487. (1) He asked her why she had given up her job. (Indirect)
said ⇒ asked
did you ⇒ she had
give ⇒ given
your ⇒ her
488. (3) She told me she really wished she had bought that new car. (Indirect)
said ⇒ told
I ⇒ she
489. (1) Ram asked his son if he was really serious about becoming a pilot. (Indirect)
said ⇒ asked
if ⇒ Conj.
are you ⇒ he was
490. (4) Tom said, "The burglar came in through the window." (Indirect)
had come (Past Per.) ⇒ came (S. Past)
491. (3) He glanced at his watch and remarked that he must leave at once. (Indirect)
and by the way ⇒ and remarked
that ⇒ Conj.
I ⇒ he
must be off ⇒ must leave at once
492. (2) He asked Sita when the next train was. (Indirect)
said ⇒ asked
when is the next train ⇒ when the next train was
493. (3) He called him a rogue and accused him of having deceived him. (Indirect)
said ⇒ called
me ⇒ him
494. (3) He told him not to go there. (Indirect)
said to ⇒ told
do not ⇒ not to
495. (4) You warned me of the coming danger. (Indirect)
said to ⇒ warned
496. (1) Rita says, "Kishore sang a song." (Direct)
When the Rep.V. is say/says, the Tense in the Rep.Sp. does not change.
497. (2) my ⇒ his
The boy exclaimed with sorrow that his mother had died. (Indirect)
Alas! ⇒ exclaimed with sorrow
498. (2) The teacher said that the boy might be allowed to go home. (Indirect)
let ⇒ might be allowed + to-Inf.
499. (4) I asked him when he would return. (Indirect)
Interrogative ⇒ Assertive
said to ⇒ asked
500. (1) He ordered his servant to go away at once. (Indirect)
said to ⇒ ordered
When an Imp. Sent. is converted into the Indirect Speech, to-Inf. is used.
501. (2) He thanked him for his kind help. (Indirect)
said to ⇒ thanked
you ⇒ him
your ⇒ his
502. (1) He admitted that he was at fault. (Indirect)
said ⇒ admitted
I am ⇒ he was
that ⇒ conj.
503. (3) I asked him to look at that picture. (Indirect)
said to ⇒ asked
look ⇒ to look
this ⇒ that
504. (2) I said, "I know this man." (Direct)
that ⇒ this
505. (2) The traveller enquired the little boy whether he could tell him the way to the railway station. The little boy replied that he could.
said ⇒ enquired
can ⇒ could
that, whether ⇒ conj.
you ⇒ he
me ⇒ him
I ⇒ he
506. (1) He applauded him saying that he had done well. (Indirect)
Bravo ⇒ applauded
you ⇒ he
have done (Pr.Per.) ⇒ had done (Past Per.)
507. (2) Addressing them as gentlemen, the speaker said that he was going to discuss the food situation in their country. (Indirect)
said ⇒ addressing
our ⇒ their
that ⇒ conj.
I am ⇒ he was

508. (3) Shanti said that Sita had a fine picture (Indirect)
that ⇒ Conj.
has ⇒ had
509. (2) He requested his friend to lend him his book. (Indirect)
said to ⇒ requested
lend ⇒ to lend
me ⇒ him
510. (2) Mother asked me whether I knew where my sister was. (Indirect)
said to ⇒ asked
whether ⇒ conj.
you ⇒ I
know (S.Pre.) ⇒ knew (S.Past)
your ⇒ my
is ⇒ was
511. (4) The accused begged the magistrate to pardon him that time. (Indirect)
said to ⇒ begged
this ⇒ that
512. (1) He assured him that he was not at fault. (Indirect)
said to ⇒ assured
that ⇒ conj.
you ⇒ him
I ⇒ he
am ⇒ was
513. (3) "I really like this furniture," she said. (Direct)
that ⇒ this
she ⇒ I
514. (2) He said to me, "My father went to Mumbai last week." (Direct)
told ⇒ said to
his ⇒ My
previous ⇒ last
515. (2) She announced, "we have selected Pradeep as our leader." (Direct)
they ⇒ we
had ⇒ have
their ⇒ our
that ⇒ Conj.
516. (4) Ram said that honesty is the best policy. (Indirect)
that ⇒ Conj.
When a sentence is a Universal Truth, the Tense in the Rep. Sp. does not change.
517. (1) She said that Satish had sung. (Indirect)
that ⇒ Conj.
Sang (Past T.) ⇒ had sung (Past Per. T.)
518. (4) I asked him when his school had closed. (Indirect)
said to ⇒ asked
did-close (Past T.) ⇒ had closed (Past Per. T.)
519. (1) The teacher asked what the matter was. (Indirect)
said ⇒ asked
is the matter ⇒ the matter was
520. (1) Said to ⇒ asked
At what time do the counters close? ⇒ at what time the counter closed. (Assertive)
521. (4) said to ⇒ asked
where is the film studio ? ⇒ where the film studio was. (assertive)
522. (1) They told us, "We waited at the station for a long time".
523. (1) The boss requested him to tell him what the old man had said that day.
524. (4) He said that she had been weeping for an hour.
525. (4) The teacher asked the students to tell him what they had learnt from the lectures that week.
526. (4) I told you that he should not be trusted.
527. (1) The clerk asked the visitor if he should ask those people to wait for him.
528. (1) Robin asked Peg if he was listening and advised him not to be thick.
529. (4) Mother said to me, "You should listen to me first and then do anything as you please."
530. (2) He said that they would be using his car for the trip.
531. (2) The wayfarer asked me if I knew the way to the Asiad village.
532. (2) He has just said that his son will be back on Friday.
533. (3) The doctor said to the patients, "Give up smoking."
534. (1) She asked me affectionately what could she do for me.
535. (4) The teacher asked the boys if they could sit still and do their work.
536. (1) Ritu told you that you were looking very pretty.
537. (4) He requested me to be kind and help him.
538. (3) He told Raina that he could not marry her then but he would surely do so the following year.
539. (1) He said to Pawan, "We should have tried harder."
540. (3) They said to me, "We have been befooled by these men."
541. (1) The spectators said to the young athlete, "Bravo! You have broken all records."
542. (1) The master said to the people, "Why do you prevent me from going near the tiger."
543. (3) Mr. Rao said, "Mr. Mehta, I have to go to the town today."
544. (2) He told me to do as I wished, but not to go and ask him for help if I got into difficulties.
545. (2) Your father told me that he should not have given his daughter such a long rope.
546. (2) You said that your parents never liked your accepting any job but you always wanted to stand on your own feet.
547. (4) She says that she keeps at an arm's length all those who try to flatter her.
548. (1) He said that Gandhi ji had faced many awkward situations when he was living in South Africa. ppp